# Averaging Method for Functional Differential Equations 

Mustapha Lakrib

## To cite this version:

Mustapha Lakrib. Averaging Method for Functional Differential Equations. Dynamical Systems [math.DS]. Université Djillali Liabès de Sidi Bel Abbès, Algérie, 2002. English. NNT: . tel01103550

HAL Id: tel-01103550
https://hal.science/tel-01103550
Submitted on 14 Jan 2015

HAL is a multi-disciplinary open access archive for the deposit and dissemination of scientific research documents, whether they are published or not. The documents may come from teaching and research institutions in France or abroad, or from public or private research centers.

L'archive ouverte pluridisciplinaire HAL, est destinée au dépôt et à la diffusion de documents scientifiques de niveau recherche, publiés ou non, émanant des établissements d'enseignement et de recherche français ou étrangers, des laboratoires publics ou privés.

## THESE

Présentée

POUR OBTENIR LE GRADE DE:

DOCTEUR D'ETAT
EN MATHEMATIQUES

PAR
Mustapha LAKRIB

# MOYENNISATION DANS LES EQUATIONS DIFFERENTIELLES FONCTIONNELLES 

Soutenue le 20 avril 2002, devant la Commission d'Examen:

Président
Directeur de Thèse
Examinateurs

Membre invité

Mr. Mustapha MECHAB
Mr. Tewfik SARI
Mr. Rachid BEBBOUCHI
Mr. Sidi Mohamed BOUGUIMA
Mr. Mouffak BENCHOHRA
Mr. Benamar CHOUAF

Moyennisation dans les Equations
Différentielles Fonctionnelles

Par<br>Mustapha LAKRIB

Classification A.M.S (2000):
34C29, 34E10, 03H05
34K20, 34K25
Mots clés:
Equations différentielles Fonctionnelles
Perturbations régulières
Oscillations non linéaires
Méthode de moyennisation
Stabilité asymptotique uniforme
Stabilité exponentielle
Analyse non standard

Averaging Method for Functional Differential Equations

2000 Mathematics Subject Classification:
34C29, 34E10, 03H05
34K20, 34K25
Key words and phrases:
Functional differential equations
Regular perturbations
Nonlinear oscillations
Averaging method
Uniform asymptotic stability
Exponential stability
Nonstandard analysis

A la mémoire de mon Père<br>A ma Mère<br>A Karima, ma femme<br>A Ikram, ma fille<br>A toute ma famille

This thesis is dedicated
To the memory of my Father
To my Mother, my wife Karima, my daughter Ikram, and to my family

## Remerciements

J'avoue que j'ai toujours appréhendé le moment où je devais écrire cette page. En effet comment trouver les mots qui exprimeraient avec fidélité ma gratitude et ma reconnaissance à tous ceux qui ont participé, d'une manière ou d'une autre, à l'aboutissement de ce travail.

Je dois beaucoup à Tewfik Sari, Professeur à l'Université de Haute Alsace à Mulhouse, qui m'a initié à la recherche en mathématiques. Il est à l'origine de cette thèse. Il n'a pas hésité à me proposer des idées et des axes de recherches. J'ai trouvé auprès de lui disponibilité, soutien, encouragement, conseil et critique. Il m'est agréable de lui exprimer mes vives remerciements et de lui témoigner ma sincère reconnaissance.

Je remercie Mustapha Mechab, Maître de Conférence à l'Université Djillali Liabès de Sidi Bel Abbès, pour l'intérêt qu'il a manifesté à l'égard de mon travail. Je suis heureux de lui exprimer ici ma profonde gratitude de m'avoir fait l'honneur d'accepter, avec sa gentillesse légendaire, la présidence du jury de cette thèse.

Merci à Rachid Bebbouchi, Professeur à l'Université des Sciences et Technologies Houari Boumèdiene d'Alger, à Sidi Mohamed Bouguima, Maître de Conférence à l'Université Abou Bakr Belkaid de Tlemcen et à Mouffak Benchohra, Maître de Conférence à l'Université Djillali Liabès de Sidi Bel Abbès, pour avoir bien voulu juger ce travail.

C'est aussi avec plaisir que je remercie Benamar Chouaf, Professeur à l'Université Djillali Liabès de Sidi Bel Abbès, pour avoir accepté de siéger dans le jury en tant que membre invité.

Mes remerciements s'adressent également à tous ceux qui ont contribué à l'accomplissement de ce travail, et ceux auprès desquels j'ai pu trouver l'aide et la compréhension nécessaire pour mener à bien mon travail de recherche.

Mon séjour au Laboratoire de Mathématiques de l'Université de Haute Alsace à Mulhouse m'a été d'un apport certain. Je tiens à exprimer ma gratitude à tous ceux qui ont sû rendre mon séjour à la fois agréable et utile.

Merci à Karima, ma femme, qui a eut à supporter mon caractère pas toujours agréable.

Enfin, merci à mes parents. Que de sacrifices ont ils conssenti pour nous offrir à mes frères, mes soeurs et moi même une vie honnête et la possibilité de poursuivre nos études. Jamais aucun mot, aucune expression, ne saura rendre compte de l'immense reconnaissance que j'ai pour eux.

Merci à tous ...

## Acknowledgments

First of all, I express my deep indebtedness to Professor Tewfik Sari, my promotor. I thank you Tewfik for all that you did for me.

I am obliged to all the members of the reading comity. I thank Doctor Mustapha Mechab (chairman), Professor Rachid Bebbouchi, Doctor Sidi Mohamed Bouguima and Doctor Mouffak Benchohra (members), for their patience and for their willingness to read and comment on the text of this thesis. I thank also the guest member Professor Benamar Chouaf.

I would like to thank all people who, at one moment or another, gave me humain or scientific support.

Finally, I thank the most important people of all: My parents and my wife.
Thank you all ...
Mustapha Lakrib

## Table of Contents

Introduction ..... 3
1 Functional differential equations: Preliminaries and short history on averaging ..... 7
1.1 Definition of a functional differential equation ..... 7
1.2 Existence, uniqueness, and continuous dependence ..... 8
1.3 Continuation of solutions ..... 9
1.4 Averaging: A short history ..... 10
1.5 Bibliography ..... 11
2 The method of averaging and functional differential equations with delay ..... 13
2.1 Introduction ..... 13
2.2 The method of averaging ..... 14
2.3 Nonstandard results ..... 16
2.3.1 The averaging results ..... 16
2.3.2 Uniform asymptotic stability ..... 17
2.4 Proofs of Theorems 2.3.1 and 2.3.2 ..... 19
2.4.1 Preliminary lemmas ..... 19
2.4.2 Proof of Theorem 2.3.1 ..... 26
2.4.3 Proof of Theorem 2.3.2 ..... 26
2.5 Bibliography ..... 28
3 Averaging method for functional differential equations ..... 29
3.1 Introduction ..... 29
3.2 Main Results ..... 30
3.3 Nonstandard Averaging Results ..... 32
3.4 Proofs of Theorems 3.3.1 and 3.3.2 ..... 32
3.4.1 Preliminary Lemmas ..... 32
3.4.2 Proof of Theorem 3.3.1 ..... 36
3.4.3 Proof of Theorem 3.3.2 ..... 36
3.5 Bibliography ..... 38
4 Time averaging for functional differential equations ..... 39
4.1 Introduction ..... 39
4.2 Conditions and Main Result ..... 40
4.3 Proof of Theorem 4.2.2 ..... 41
4.3.1 Preliminary Lemmas ..... 41
4.3.2 Proof of Theorem 4.2.2 ..... 46
4.4 Bibliography ..... 46
A Internal Set Theory: A Tutorial ..... 49
A. 1 Brief history ..... 49
A. 2 Presentation of Internal Set Theory ..... 50
A.2.1 To be internal or external ..... 50
A.2.2 The axioms ..... 50
A.2.3 Reduction algorithm ..... 52
A. 3 Shadows and S-properties ..... 52
A. 4 Permanence principles ..... 53
A. 5 Bibliography ..... 54
B Sur la moyennisation dans les systèmes à plusieurs fréquences ..... 57
B. 1 Introduction ..... 57
B. 2 Moyennes temporelle et spatiale ..... 60
B. 3 Moyennisation et $\sqrt{\varepsilon}$-non résonance ..... 64
B.3.1 Domaine $\sqrt{\varepsilon}$-non résonant ..... 65
B.3.2 Résultat principal ..... 66
B. 4 Bibliographie ..... 69
C On the validity of the averaging method for all time ..... 71
C. 1 Introduction ..... 71
C. 2 Preliminaries ..... 72
C. 3 The k-th order averaging expansion ..... 74
C. 4 The k -th order averaging expansion in the contracting case ..... 75
C. 5 Bibliography ..... 79
D On solutions of linear difference equations with infinite delay ..... 81
D. 1 Introduction ..... 81
D. 2 Main results ..... 82
D. 3 Bibliography ..... 87
E Oscillation of two delays differential equations with positive and negative coefficients ..... 89
E. 1 Introduction ..... 89
E. 2 The main result ..... 91
E. 3 Bibliography ..... 96

## Introduction

This thesis contains contents of three articles as main topic, however it is not a collection of articles in literal meaning. The articles are:

Chapter 2: "The method of averaging and functional differential equations with delay", International Journal of Mathematics and Mathematical Sciences, Volume 26, Issue 8 (2001), 497-511.

Chapter 3: "Averaging method for functional differential equations", (Submitted for publication).

Chapter 4: "Time averaging for functional differential equations", (Submitted for publication).

They are concerned with the use of the method of averaging to functional differential equations with fast oscillating solutions.

The motivation of this work is based on the following statement: Among authors who interested to the method of averaging for functional differential equations, some of them, as Foduck, Halanay, Hale, Medvedev, Morgunov and Volosov (Chap.1, [1-4] and $[7-8]$ ), established results for equations of the form

$$
\dot{x}(t)=\varepsilon f\left(t, x_{t}\right)
$$

under restrictive conditions on $f$ (almost periodicity, boundedness, Lipschitz, etc... ). Others, as Hale and Verduyn (Chap.1, [5]), investigated the more general case

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}(t)=f\left(\frac{t}{\varepsilon}, x_{t}\right) . \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

For this, the cited authors gave an extension of the method of averaging to infinite dimentional systems which include functional differential equations. Here, the conditions on $f$ are also restrictive (almost periodicity, boundedness, Lipschitz, etc... ).

Our objective, in this thesis, is to make the conditions on $f$ in equation (1) less restrictive and to treat further in each case the equation within its associated natural phase space. All the results are formulated in both classical mathematics and nonstandard analysis. However, they are proved within an axiomatic description of A. Robinson's Nonstandard Analysis (NSA) (Append.A, [16]), namely Internal Set Theory, proposed by E. Nelson (Append.A, [13]).

The organization of this thesis is as follows:
In Chapter 1 we recall the basic theory of existence, uniqueness, continuation, and continuous dependence on parameters and initial data. There, we give also a short history on the averaging of functional differential equations.

In Chapter 2 we treat averaging for functional differential equations with delay of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}(t)=f\left(\frac{t}{\varepsilon}, x(t-r)\right) . \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Under smoothness hypotheses that are less restrictive than those ones in classical literature, we show that (2) may be approximated, first on finite time intervals and next for all time, by the averaged functional differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{y}(t)=f^{o}(y(t-r)) \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
f^{o}(u):=\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, u) d \tau \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

We will emphasize that, in opposition to the approach in [5] cited previously, all the analysis is kept in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$.

There, we prove the following results:
Theorem 1 (Theorem 2.2.1) Assume that $f$ is continuous and bounded on $\mathbb{R}_{+} \times$ $\mathbb{R}^{n}$, that the continuity of $f=f(\tau, u)$ in $u \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$ is uniform with respect to $\tau$, that for all $u \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$ there exists a limit (4), and that equation (3) has the uniqueness of the solutions with the prescribed initial data.

If $y=y(. ; 0, \phi)$ is the solution of (3) and $J$ is its maximal interval of existence, then for any $L>0, L \in J$, and any $\delta>0$ there exists an $\varepsilon_{0}>0$ such that, for all $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right]$, any solution $x$ of (2) with initial value $\phi$ at 0 is defined at least on $[0, L]$ and satisfies $\|x(t)-y(t)\|<\delta$ for all $t \in[0, L]$.

Theorem 2 (Theorem 2.2.2) Assume that all hypotheses in Theorem 1 hold, and assume that $y_{e}$ is an uniformly asymptoticaly stable rest point of (3), and that $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ lies in the basin of attraction of $y_{e}$.

If $y=y(. ; 0, \phi)$ is the solution of (3), then for any $\delta>0$ there exists an $\varepsilon_{0}>0$ such that, for all $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right]$, any solution $x$ of (2) with initial value $\phi$ at 0 is defined for all $t \geq 0$ and satisfies $\|x(t)-y(t)\|<\delta$ for all $t \geq 0$.

Chapter 3 is fundamental in the sense that there, we are concerned with the use of the method of averaging to functional differential equations of the general form (1). The results discussed in this chapter generalize those ones obtained in Chapter 2. The theorems we prove are the following ones:

Theorem 3 (Theorem 3.2.1) Assume that $f$ is continuous and bounded on $\mathbb{R}_{+} \times$ $\mathcal{C}_{o}$, that the continuity of $f=f(\tau, u)$ in $u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ is uniform with respect to $\tau$, that for all $u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ there exists a limit (4), and that the averaged equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{y}(t)=f^{o}\left(y_{t}\right) \tag{5}
\end{equation*}
$$

has the uniqueness of the solutions with the prescribed initial data.
If $y=y\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ is the solution of (5) and $J$ is the maximal interval of existence of $y$, then for any $L>t_{0}, L \in J$, and any $\delta>0$ there exists an $\varepsilon_{0}>0$ such that, for all $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right]$, any solution $x$ of (1) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ is defined at least on $\left[t_{0}, L\right]$ and the inequality $\|x(t)-y(t)\|<\delta$ holds for all $t \in\left[t_{0}, L\right]$.

Theorem 4 (Theorem 3.2.2) Assume that all hypotheses in Theorem 3 hold, and assume that $f=f(\tau, u)$ is continuously differentiable with respect to $u$, that $y_{e}$ is an exponentialy stable rest point of (5), and that $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ lies in the domain of exponential stability of $y_{e}$.

If $x=x\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ is the solution of (1) and $y=y\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ is the solution of (5), then for any $\delta>0$ there exists an $\varepsilon_{0}>0$ such that, for all $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right]$, $x$ is defined on $\left[t_{0}, \infty\right)$ and the inequality $\|x(t)-y(t)\|<\delta$ holds for all $t \geq t_{0}$.

In Chapter 4, we propose an alternate result on the averaging of functional differential equations on finite time intervals. For this, we remove the assumption on the boundedness of $f$ and replace the condition on the uniform continuity of $f=f(\tau, u)$ in $u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ with respect to $\tau$, by the (stronger) condition that $f$ is Lipschitz. So, we prove the following result:

Theorem 5 (Theorem 4.2.1) Assume that $f$ is continuous on $\mathbb{R}_{+} \times \mathcal{C}_{o}$, that $f$ is lipschitzian; that is, there exists some constant $k$ such that

$$
\left\|f\left(\tau, u_{1}\right)-f\left(\tau, u_{2}\right)\right\| \leq k\left|u_{1}-u_{2}\right|, \quad \text { for all } \tau \in \mathbb{R}_{+} \text {and } u_{1}, u_{2} \in \mathcal{C}_{o}
$$

and that for all $u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ there exists a limit (4).
If $x=x\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ is the solution of (1), $y=y\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ is the solution of (5) and $J$ is the maximal interval of existence of $y$, then for any $L>t_{0}, L \in J$, and any $\delta>0$ there exists an $\varepsilon_{0}>0$ such that, for all $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right], x$ is defined at least on $\left[t_{0}, L\right]$ and satisfies $\|x(t)-y(t)\|<\delta$ on $t \in\left[t_{0}, L\right]$.

In Appendix A, we give a tutorial on Internal Set Theory which is an axiomatic approach of the Nonstandard Analysis. The purpose of this appendix is to recall some notions and tools of Nonstandard Analysis which have been either mentioned or used throughout this thesis, namely in Chapters 2-4 and Appendix B.

At the end of this thesis, we have put in Appendices B, C, D and E, some works on other topics, which are either published or in press. These works are:

Appendix B: "Sur la moyennisation dans les systèmes à plusieurs fréquences", Maghreb Mathematical Review (In press).

Appendix C: "On the validity of the averaging method for all time", Maghreb Mathematical Review, Volume 8, No 1 \& 2, June \& December 1999, 119-128.

Appendix D: "On solutions of linear difference equations with infinite delay", Southwest Journal of Pure and Applied Mathematics, Issue 2 (2000), 52-59.

Appendix E:"Oscillation of two delays differential equations with positive and negative coefficients", Mathematica Pannonica, Volume 12, Issue 2 (2001), 225-234.

## Chapter 1

## Functional differential equations: Preliminaries and short history on averaging

We recall the basic theory of existence, uniqueness, continuation, and continuous dependence for functional differential equations (see [5] or [7]). In the last section, we review a short history of the existing theory of averaging of functional differential equations.

### 1.1 Definition of a functional differential equation

Let $r \geq 0$ be a given real number and let $\mathcal{C}\left([a, b], \mathbb{R}^{n}\right)$ denote the Banach space of continuous functions mapping the interval $[a, b]$ into $\mathbb{R}^{n}$ with the topology of uniform convergence. If $[a, b]=[-r, 0]$ we let $\mathcal{C}_{o}=\mathcal{C}\left([a, b], \mathbb{R}^{n}\right)$ and designate the norm of $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ by $|\phi|=\sup \{\|\phi(\theta)\|:-r \leq \theta \leq 0\}$ where $\|\cdot\|$ is any convenient norm in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$. Let $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ and $L \geq 0$. If $x \in \mathcal{C}\left(\left[t_{0}-r, t_{0}+L\right], \mathbb{R}^{n}\right)$ and $t \in\left[t_{0}, t_{0}+L\right]$, then $x_{t} \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ is defined by $x_{t}(\theta)=x(t+\theta)$ for $\theta \in[-r, 0]$. Here $x_{t}($.$) represents the history of the$ state from time $t-r$ up to the present time $t$.

Let $D$ be a subset of $\mathbb{R} \times \mathcal{C}_{o}$ and $f: D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be a given function. Let "." represent the right-hand derivative.

Definition 1.1.1 We say that the relation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}(t)=f\left(t, x_{t}\right) \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a functional differential equation on $D$.

## Definition 1.1.2

1. A function $x$ is said to be a solution of (1.1) on $\left[t_{0}-r, t_{0}+L\right)$ if there are $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ and $L>0$ such that $x \in \mathcal{C}\left(\left[t_{0}-r, t_{0}+L\right), \mathbb{R}^{n}\right),\left(t, x_{t}\right) \in D$, and $x$ satisfies (1.1) for $t \in\left[t_{0}-r, t_{0}+L\right)$.
2. For given $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ and $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$, we say that $x$ is a solution of (1.1) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ if there is an $L>0$ such that $x$ is a solution of (1.1) on $\left[t_{0}-r, t_{0}+L\right)$ and $x_{t_{0}}=\phi$.

Remark 1.1.1 If $x$ is the unique solution of (1.1) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$, we denote it $x=x\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$.

Equation (1.1) is a very general type of equation and includes ordinary differential equations $(r=0)$

$$
\dot{x}(t)=F(t, x(t)),
$$

differential difference equations

$$
\dot{x}(t)=f\left(t, x(t), x\left(t-r_{1}(t)\right), \ldots, x\left(t-r_{p}(t)\right)\right)
$$

with $0 \leq r_{i}(t) \leq r, i=1,2, \ldots, p$, as well as the integro-differential equation

$$
\dot{x}(t)=\int_{-r}^{0} g(t, \theta, x(t+\theta)) d \theta .
$$

Much more general equations are also included in equation (1.1).
Definition 1.1.3 We say that equation (1.1) is autonomuous if $f(t, \phi)=g(\phi)$ where $g$ does not depend on $t$.

Lemma 1.1.1 If $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}, \phi \in \mathcal{C}_{0}$ are given, and $f: D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ is continuous, then finding a solution of (1.1) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ is equivalent to solving the integral equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=\phi(0)+\int_{t_{0}}^{t} f\left(s, x_{s}\right) d s, \quad t \geq t_{0} ; \quad x_{t_{0}}=\phi \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 1.2 Existence, uniqueness, and continuous dependence

In this section, we recall a basic existence theorem for the initial-value problem of (1.1). Also, a result on continuous dependence and an other on uniqueness, are recalled.

Theorem 1.2.1 (Existence) Let $\Omega$ be an open subset of $\mathbb{R} \times \mathcal{C}_{o}$ and let $f: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be continuous. If $\left(t_{0}, \phi\right) \in \Omega$, then there is a solution of (1.1) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$.

More generally, if $W \subset \Omega$ is compact and $f: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ is continuous, then there are a neighborhood $V \subset \Omega$ of $W$ such that $f_{\left.\right|_{V}}$ is bounded, and an $L>0$ such that for any $\left(t_{0}, \phi\right) \in W$, there is a solution $x$ of (1.1) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ that exists on $\left[t_{0}-r, t_{0}+L\right]$.

Theorem 1.2.2 (Continuous dependence) Let $\Omega$ be an open set in $\mathbb{R} \times \mathcal{C}_{o},\left(t_{0}, \phi\right) \in$ $\Omega, f: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be continuous, and $x=x\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ be a solution of (1.1) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ which exists and is unique on $\left[t_{0}-r, b\right]$. Let $W \subset \Omega$ be the compact set defined by $W=\left\{\left(t, x_{t}\right): t \in\left[t_{0}, b\right]\right\}$ and let $V$ be a neighborhood of $W$ on which $f$ is bounded. If $\left(t^{k}, \phi^{k}, f^{k}\right), k=1,2, \ldots$ satisfies $t^{k} \rightarrow t_{0}, \phi^{k} \rightarrow \phi$, and $\left|f^{k}-f\right|=\sup _{(t, u) \in V}\left\|f^{k}(t, u)-f(t, u)\right\| \rightarrow 0$ as $k \rightarrow \infty$, then there is a $k^{0}$ such that the functional differential equation

$$
\dot{x}(t)=f^{k}\left(t, x_{t}\right)
$$

for $k \geq k^{0}$ is such that each solution $x^{k}$ with initial value $\phi^{k}$ at $t^{k}$ exists on $\left[t^{k}-r, b\right]$ and $x^{k} \rightarrow x$ uniformly on $\left[t_{0}-r, b\right]$. Since all $x^{k}$ may not be defined on $\left[t_{0}-r, b\right]$, $x^{k} \rightarrow x$ uniformly on $\left[t_{0}-r, b\right]$ means that for any $\eta>0$, there is a $k_{1}=k_{1}(\eta)$ such that $x^{k}(t), k \geq k_{1}$, is defined on $\left[t_{0}-r+\eta, b\right]$, and $x^{k} \rightarrow x$ uniformly on $\left[t_{0}-r+\eta, b\right]$.

Theorem 1.2.3 (Uniqueness) Let $\Omega$ be an open subset of $\mathbb{R} \times \mathcal{C}_{o}$ and let $f: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be continuous. Suppose $f=f(t, u)$ is lipschitzian on $u$ in each compact set in $\Omega$. If $\left(t_{0}, \phi\right) \in \Omega$, then there is a unique solution of (1.1) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$.

### 1.3 Continuation of solutions

Suppose $f$ in (1.1) is continuous and let $x$ be a solution of (1.1) on an interval $\left[t_{0}-r, a\right), a>t_{0}$.

Definition 1.3.1 We say $\hat{x}$ is a continuation of $x$ if there is $a b a$, such that $\hat{x}$ is defined on $\left[t_{0}-r, b\right)$, coincides with $x$ on $\left[t_{0}-r, a\right)$, and satisfies (1.1) on $\left[t_{0}-r, b\right)$.

A solution $x$ is noncontinuable if no such continuation exists; that is, the interval $\left[t_{0}-r, a\right)$ is the maximal interval of existence of the solution $x$.

The existence of a noncontinuable solution follows from Zorn's lemma. Also, the maximal interval of existence must be open.

Theorem 1.3.1 Let $\Omega$ be an open set in $\mathbb{R} \times \mathcal{C}_{o}$ and let $f: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be continuous. If $x$ is a noncontinuable solution of (1.1) on $\left[t_{0}-r, b\right)$, then for any compact set $W$ in $\Omega$, there is a $t_{W}$ such that $\left(t, x_{t}\right) \notin W$ for $t_{W} \leq t<b$.

Corollary 1.3.1 Let $\Omega$ be an open subset of $\mathbb{R} \times \mathcal{C}_{o}$ and let $f: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be continuous. If $x$ is a noncontinuable solution of (1.1) on $\left[t_{0}-r, b\right)$ and $W$ is the closure of the set $\left\{\left(t, x_{t}\right): t_{0} \leq t<b\right\}$ in $\mathbb{R} \times \mathcal{C}_{o}$, then $W$ compact implies there is a sequence $\left\{t_{k}\right\}$ of real numbers, $t_{k} \rightarrow b^{-}$as $k \rightarrow \infty$ such that $\left(t_{k}, x_{t_{k}}\right)$ tends to $\partial \Omega$ as $k \rightarrow \infty$. If $r>0$, then there is $a \psi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ such that $(b, \psi) \in \partial \Omega$ and $\left(t, x_{t}\right) \rightarrow(b, \psi)$ as $t \rightarrow b^{-}$.

### 1.4 Averaging: A short history

There is a much less extensive literature on the averaging of functional differential equations compared to this one devoted to the averaging of ordinary differential equations.

In the 1960's, authors as V.I. Foduck [1], A. Halanay [2, 3], J.K. Hale [4], G.N. Medvedev [8, 9], V.M. Volosov and B.I. Morgunov [9], introduced the use of the method of averaging to functional differential equations. The most general of the results developed by the cited authors are given in [7]. There, the averaging is discussed for the functional differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}(t)=\varepsilon f\left(t, x_{t}\right), \quad t \geq t_{0} ; \quad x_{t_{0}}=\phi \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\varepsilon>0$ is a small parameter.
The associated averaged equation is the ordinary differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{y}(t)=\varepsilon f^{o}(\tilde{y}), \quad \tilde{y}(\theta)=y \text { for } \theta \in[-r, 0] \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $y\left(t_{0}\right)=\phi\left(t_{0}\right)$ and

$$
f^{o}(u):=\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, u) d \tau
$$

Suitable conditions are given, under which one can compare solutions of (1.3) to those ones of (1.4).

The techniques used in the literature to prove the above assertion follow different approachs. In [7], equation (1.3) is considered as a perturbation of

$$
\dot{x}(t)=0 \cdot x_{t}
$$

and the solution of (1.3) is decomposed as $x_{t}=\tilde{I} z(t)+w_{t}$ where $\tilde{I}(\theta)=I$, the identity, for $\theta \in[-r, 0]$. Then, conditions are derived such that $w_{t}$ approaches zero faster than any exponential. By use of the invariant manifold theory, it is shown that the flow for (1.3) in any bounded set is equivalent to the flow defined by an ordinary differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{z}(t)=\varepsilon g(t, z, \varepsilon), \quad g(t, z, 0)=f(t, \tilde{z}) . \tag{1.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next, classical averaging procedures of ordinary differential equations are applied to (1.5) to obtain the approximation of solutions of (1.3) by those ones of (1.4).

There is a few works dedicated to the use of the method of averaging to functional differential equations in the general case, that is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}(t)=f\left(\frac{t}{\varepsilon}, x_{t}\right) . \tag{1.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

In [6], the authors introduce an extension of the method of averaging to abstract evolutionary equations in Banach spaces. In particular, they rewrite equation (1.6) as an ordinary differential equation in an infinite dimensional Banach space and proceed formally from there.

### 1.5 Bibliography

[1] V.I. Foduck, The method of averaging for differential equations of the neutral type, Ukrai. Math. Zh. 20 (1968), 203-209.
[2] A. Halanay, The method of averaging in equations with retardation, Rev. Math. Pur. Appl. Acad. R.P.R. 4 (1959), 467-483.
[3] A. Halanay, On the method of averaging for differential equations with retarded argument, J. Math. Anal. Appl. 14 (1966), 70-76.
[4] J.K. Hale, Averaging methods for differential equations with retarded arguments, J. Diff. Equa. 2 (1966), 57-73.
[5] J.K. Hale, "Theory of functional differential equations", Appl. Math. Sciences 3, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1977.
[6] J.K. Hale and S.M. Verduyn Lunel, Averaging in infinite dimensions, J. Integral Equations Appl. 2, no. 4 (1990), 463-493.
[7] J.K. Hale and S.M. Verduyn Lunel, "Introduction to functional differential equations", Appl. Math. Sciences 99, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1993.
[8] G.N. Medvedev, Asymptotic solutions of some systems of differential equations with deviating argument, Soviet Math. Dokl. 9 (1968), 85-87.
[9] V.M. Volosov, G.M. Medvedev and B.I. Morgunov, On the applications of the averaging method for certain systems of differential equations with delay, Vestnik M.G.U. Ser. III, Fizika, Astronomija (1968), 251-294.

## Chapter 2

## The method of averaging and functional differential equations with delay


#### Abstract

This chapter essentially contains the paper [5] "The method of averaging and functional differential equations with delay", published in International Journal of Mathematics and Mathematical Sciences, Volume 26, Issue 8 (2001), 497-511.


We present a naturel extension of the method of averaging to fast oscillating functional differential equations with delay. Unlike the usual approach where the analysis is kept in an infinite dimensional Banach space, our analysis is achieved in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$.

### 2.1 Introduction

An important tool in the rigorous study of differential equations with a small parameter is the method of averaging, which is well known for ordinary differential equations $[1,6,7,8]$ and for functional differential equations with small delay $[2,3,9]$. In both cases, the corresponding averaged equations are ordinary differential equations. However, for fast oscillating functional differential equations with large bounded delay, the method of averaging is not nearly so developed as in the two previous cases. Among recent works devoted to this last case, we will cite the paper of Hale and Verduyn Lunel [4]. There, the authors rewrite a functional differential equation with delay as an ordinary differential equation in an infinite dimensional Banach space and proceed formally from there.

In this chapter, we develop an improved theory of averaging for functional differential equations with delay under smoothness hypotheses that are less restrictive than those of [4]. Also all our analysis is kept in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$. This is performed in Section 2.2. There, we state closeness of solutions of the averaged and original equations on finite time intervals (Theorem 2.2.1). We also investigate the long time behaviour
of the solutions of the original equation (Theorem 2.2.2). In Section 2.3 we present the nonstandard translates (Theorems 2.3.1 and 2.3.2) in the language of Internal Set Theory (See Appendix A) of Theorems 2.2.1 and 2.2.2. We end this section with an external caracterization of the uniform asymptotic stability which is the main assumption for the validity of the result of Theorem 2.3.2. Finally, in Section 2.4 we give the proofs of Theorems 2.3.1 and 2.3.2. As ordinary differential equations and functional differential equations with small delay are special cases of functional differential equations with delay, the proofs developed in this section provide alternative proofs to the techniques of averaging on these equations found, for example, in $[7,8]$.

### 2.2 The method of averaging

In this section, we present the main results on averaging for functional differential equations with delay.

Suppose $f: \mathbb{R} \times U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ is a continuous function, where $U$ is an open subset of $\mathbb{R}^{n}$. Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$. Let $\varepsilon>0$ be a real parameter. Along with the functional differential equation with delay

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}(t)=f\left(\frac{t}{\varepsilon}, x(t-r)\right), \quad t \geq 0 ; \quad x_{0}=\phi \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

we consider the averaged equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{y}(t)=f^{o}(y(t-r)), \quad t \geq 0 ; \quad y_{0}=\phi \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
f^{o}(x):=\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, x) d \tau \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

As a first result, we give comparison of solutions of the averaged and original equations on finite time intervals.

Theorem 2.2.1 Assume that
(H0) The function $f$ is bounded on $\mathbb{R}_{+} \times U$.
(H1) The continuity of $f=f(\tau, x)$ in $x \in U$ is uniform with respect to $\tau \in \mathbb{R}_{+}$.
(H2) For all $x \in U$ there exists a limit (2.3).
(H3) Equation (2.2) has a unique solution.
Let $y=y(. ; 0, \phi)$ be the solution of (2.2) and let $J=[-r, \omega), 0<\omega \leq+\infty$, be its maximal interval of definition. For any $L>0, L \in J$, and any $\delta>0$ there exists an $\varepsilon_{0}=\varepsilon_{0}(L, \delta)>0$ such that, for all $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right]$, any solution $x$ of (2.1) with initial value $\phi$ at 0 is defined at least on $[0, L]$ and satisfies $\|x(t)-y(t)\|<\delta$ for all $t \in[0, L]$.

Remark 2.2.1 Assume that the initial time $t_{0} \neq 0$. Let $y=y\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ be the solution of (2.2) and let $J=\left[t_{0}-r, t_{0}+\omega\right), 0<\omega \leq+\infty$, be its maximal interval of definition. The conclusions of Theorem 2.2.1 become: For any $L>0, L+t_{0} \in J$, and any $\delta>0$ there exists an $\varepsilon_{0}=\varepsilon_{0}(L, \delta)>0$ such that, for all $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right]$, any solution $x$ of (2.1) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ is defined at least on $\left[t_{0}, t_{0}+L\right]$ and satisfies $\|x(t)-y(t)\|<\delta$ for all $t \in\left[t_{0}, t_{0}+L\right]$.

One can also precise the long time behaviour of a solution of (2.1) provided that more is known about the solution of (2.2). To give estimate for all time, we assume that the solution of (2.2) tend toward an equilibrium. Before this, we first recall the concept of uniform asymptotic stability of equilibrium points of autonomous functional differential equations with delay.

Consider the autonomous functional differential equation with delay

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{y}(t)=f^{o}(y(t-r)) \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $f^{o}: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ is a continuous function, $U$ is an open subset of $\mathbb{R}^{n}$, and $r>0$ is a constant.

Since (2.4) is autonomous, the concepts of asymptotic stability and uniform asymptotic stability of equilibrium points of (2.4) coincide. Then, it is sufficient to deal directly with uniform notions.

Definition 2.2.1 The equilibrium point $y_{e}$ of (2.4) is said to be

1. Uniformly stable (in the sense of Liapunov) if for any $\mu>0$, there $\mu>0$, there exists $\eta=\eta(\mu)>0$ with the property that solution $y$ of (2.4) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ for which $\left|\phi-y_{e}\right|<\eta$ can be continued for all $t>t_{0}$ and satisfies $\left\|y(t)-y_{e}\right\|<\mu$.
2. Uniformly attractive if there exists $b_{0}>0$ with the respective properties:
a) For all $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ any solution $y$ of (2.4) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ for which $\left|\phi-y_{e}\right|<b_{0}$ can be continued for all $t>t_{0}$.
b) For every $\delta>0$, there exists $T=T(\delta)>0$ ( $T$ depends on $\delta$ but not on $t_{0}$ ) such that $\left\|y(t)-y_{e}\right\|<\delta$ for $t>t_{0}+T(\delta)$, i.e., $\lim _{t \rightarrow \infty} y(t)=y_{e}$ uniformly in $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$.
3. Uniformly asymptotically stable if it is uniformly stable and uniformly attractive.

Remark 2.2.2 The ball $\mathcal{B}$ of center $y_{e}$ and radius $b_{0}$ where the attraction is uniform will be called the basin of attraction of $y_{e}$.

We now return to the averaged equation (2.2). We assume that $y_{e}$ is an equilibrium point of $(2.2)$, that is, $f^{o}\left(y_{e}\right)=0$. As a next result of this section, we prove the validity of the approximation of a solution $x$ of (2.1) by the solution $y$ of (2.2) for all (future) time, under additional conditions about the equilibrium point $y_{e}$ and the initial value $\phi$.

Theorem 2.2.2 Let the hypotheses (H0) to (H3) of Theorem 2.2.1 be true, and assume that
(H4) The point $y_{e}$ is uniformly asymptotically stable.
(H5) The initial value $\phi$ in (2.2) lies in the basin of attraction of $y_{e}$.
Let $y=y(. ; 0, \phi)$ be the solution of (2.2). Then for any $\delta>0$ there exists an $\varepsilon_{0}=\varepsilon_{0}(\delta)>0$ such that, for all $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right]$, any solution $x$ of (2.1) with initial value $\phi$ at 0 is defined for all $t \geq 0$ and satisfies $\|x(t)-y(t)\|<\delta$ for all $t \geq 0$.

### 2.3 Nonstandard results

### 2.3.1 The averaging results

First we give nonstandard formulations of Theorem 2.2.1, Remark 2.2.1, and Theorem 2.2.2. Then, by use of the reduction algorithm (Appendix A, subsection A.2.3), we show that the reduction of Theorem 2.3.1, Remark 2.3.1, and Theorem 2.3.2 are Theorem 2.2.1, Remark 2.2.1 and Theorem 2.2.2, respectively.

Theorem 2.3.1 Let $U$ be a standard open subset of $\mathbb{R}^{n}$. Let standard continuous function. Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ be standard. Assume that hypotheses (H0) to (H3) in Theorem 2.2.1 hold. Let $y=y(. ; 0, \phi)$ be the solution of (2.2) and let Theorem 2.2.1 hold. Let $y=y(. ; 0, \phi)$ be the solution of (2.2) and let $J=[-r, \omega), 0<\omega \leq+\infty$, be its maximal interval of definition. Let $\varepsilon>0$ be infinitesimal. Then for any standard $L>0, L \in J$, any solution $x$ of (2.1) with initial value $\phi$ at 0 is defined at least on $[0, L]$ and satisfies $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for all $t \in[0, L]$.

Remark 2.3.1 Assume that the initial time $t_{0} \neq 0$. Let $y=y\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ be the solution of (2.2) and let $J=\left[t_{0}-r, t_{0}+\omega\right), 0<\omega \leq+\infty$, be its maximal interval of definition. The conclusions of Theorem 2.3.1 become: Let $\varepsilon>0$ be infinitesimal. Then for any standard $L>0, L+t_{0} \in J$, any solution $x$ of (2.1) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ is defined at least on $\left[t_{0}, t_{0}+L\right]$ and satisfies $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for all $t \in\left[t_{0}, t_{0}+L\right]$.

Theorem 2.3.2 Let $U$ be a standard open subset of $\mathbb{R}^{n}$. Let standard continuous function. Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ be standard. Let $y_{e}$ be a standard equilibrium point of (2.2). Assume that hypotheses (H0) to (H5) in Theorem 2.2.2 hold. Let $y=y(. ; 0, \phi)$ be the solution of (2.2). Let Let $y=y(. ; 0, \phi)$ be the solution of (2.2). Let $\varepsilon>0$ be infinitesimal. Then any solution $x$ of (2.1) with initial value $\phi$ at 0 is defined for all $t \geq 0$ and satisfies $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for all $t \geq 0$.

The proofs of Theorems 2.3.1 and 2.3.2 are postponed to Section 4.4. Theorem 2.3.1, Remark 2.3.1, and Theorem 2.3.2 are external statements. We show that the reduction of Theorem 2.3.1 (resp., Remark 2.3.1 and Theorem 2.3.2) is Theorem 2.2.1 (resp., Remark 2.2.1 and Theorem 2.2.2).

Reduction of Theorem 2.3.1 Let $B$ be the formula "If $\delta>0$ then any solution $x$ of (2.1) is defined at least on $[0, L]$ and satisfies $\|x(t)-y(t)\|<\delta$ for all $t \in[0, L]$ ". To say that "any solution $x$ of (2.1) is defined at least on $[0, L]$ and satisfies $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for all $t \in[0, L]$ " is the same as saying $\forall^{s t} \delta B$. Then Theorem 2.3.1 asserts that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\forall \varepsilon\left(\forall^{s t} \eta \varepsilon<\eta \Longrightarrow \forall^{s t} \delta B\right) \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this formula $L$ is standard and $\varepsilon, \eta$ and $\delta$ range over the strictly positive real numbers. By (A.1) (Appendix A, subsection A.2.3), formula (2.5) is equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\forall \delta \exists^{f i n} \eta^{\prime} \forall \varepsilon\left(\forall \eta \in \eta^{\prime} \varepsilon<\eta \Longrightarrow B\right) . \tag{2.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $\eta^{\prime}$ a finite set, $\forall \eta \in \eta^{\prime} \varepsilon<\eta$ is the same as $\varepsilon<\varepsilon_{0}$ for $\varepsilon_{0}=\min \eta^{\prime}$, and so formula (2.6) is equivalent to

$$
\forall \delta \exists \varepsilon_{0} \forall \varepsilon\left(\varepsilon<\varepsilon_{0} \Longrightarrow B\right)
$$

This shows that for any standard $L>0, L \in J$, the statement of Theorem 2.2.1 holds, thus by transfer (Appendix A, subsection A.2.2), it holds for any $L>0$, $L \in J$.

The reduction of Remark 2.3.1 (resp., Theorem 2.3.2) to Remark 2.2.1 (resp., Theorem 2.2.2) follows almost verbatim the reduction of Theorem 2.3.1 to Theorem 2.2.1 and is not done here.

### 2.3.2 Uniform asymptotic stability

As the condition (H4) will be used in its external form, we give the external characterizations of the notion of uniform stability and uniform attractivity of the equilibrium point $y_{e}$ of (2.4), given in Definition 2.2.1.

By transfer (Appendix A, subsection A.2.2), we may assume that $f^{o}, r$ and $y_{e}$ are standard.

Lemma 2.3.1 The equilibrium point $y_{e}$ of (2.4) is

1. Uniformly stable if and only if for all $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ any solution $y$ of (2.4) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ for which $\phi(t) \simeq y_{e}$ for $t \in[-r, 0]$, can be continued for all $t>t_{0}$ and satisfies $y(t) \simeq y_{e}$.
2. Uniformly attractive if and only if it admits a standard basin of attraction, that is, there exists a standard $b_{0}>0$ with the property that for all $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ any solution $y$ of (2.4) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ for which $\left|\phi-y_{e}\right|<b_{0}$, $\phi$ standard, can be continued for all $t>t_{0}$ and satisfies $y(t) \simeq y_{e}$ for all $t$ such that $t-t_{0} \simeq+\infty$.

Proof. 1. Let $A$ be the formula " $\left|\phi-y_{e}\right|<\eta$ " and let $B$ be the formula "Any solution $y$ of (2.4) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ can be continued for all $t>t_{0}$ and
satisfies the inequality $\left\|y(t)-y_{e}\right\|<\mu$ ". The caracterization of uniform stability in the lemma is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\forall t_{0} \forall \phi\left(\forall^{s t} \eta A \Longrightarrow \forall^{s t} \mu B\right) \tag{2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this formula $y, r$ and $y_{e}$ are standard parameters and $\eta, \mu$ range over the strictly positive real numbers. By (A.1) (Appendix A, subsection A.2.3), formula (2.7) is equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\forall \mu \exists^{f i n} \eta^{\prime} \forall t_{0} \forall \phi\left(\forall \eta \in \eta^{\prime} A \Longrightarrow B\right) \tag{2.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $\eta^{\prime}$ a finite set, $\forall \eta \in \eta^{\prime} A$ is the same as $A$ for $\eta=\min \eta^{\prime}$, and so formula (2.8) is equivalent to

$$
\forall \mu \exists \eta \forall t_{0} \forall \phi(A \Longrightarrow B)
$$

This is the usual definition of uniform stability.
2. By transfer (Appendix A, subsection A.2.2), the uniform attractivity of $y_{e}$ is equivalent to the existence of a standard basin of attraction, that is, $b_{0}$ in Remark 2.2.2 is standard. The caracterization of standard basin of attraction in the lemma is that for all standard $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ such that $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ any solution $y$ of (2.4) with $y$ of (2.4) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ can be continued for all $t>t_{0}$ and satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\forall t_{0} \forall t\left(\forall^{s t} T \quad t-t_{0}>T \Longrightarrow \forall^{s t} \delta\left\|y(t)-y_{e}\right\|<\delta\right) \tag{2.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this formula $y, \phi$ and $y_{e}$ are standard parameters and $T, \delta$ range over the strictly positive real numbers. By (A.1) (Appendix A, subsection A.2.3), formula (2.9) is equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\forall \delta \exists^{f i n} T^{\prime} \forall t_{0} \forall t\left(\forall T \in T^{\prime} \quad t-t_{0}>T \Longrightarrow\left\|y(t)-y_{e}\right\|<\delta\right) \tag{2.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $T^{\prime}$ a finite set $\forall T \in T^{\prime} t-t_{0}>T$ is the same as $t-t_{0}>T$ for $T=\max T^{\prime}$, and so formula (2.10) is equivalent to

$$
\forall \delta \exists T \forall t_{0} \forall t\left(t-t_{0}>T \Longrightarrow\left\|y(t)-y_{e}\right\|<\delta\right)
$$

We have shown that for all standard continuous function $\phi$ in the basin of attraction (and consequently, by transfer (Appendix A, subsection A.2.2), for all continuous function $\phi$ in the basin of attraction of $y_{e}$ ), for all $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ any solution $y$ of (2.4) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ can be continued for all $t>t_{0}$ and satisfies $\lim _{t \rightarrow \infty} y(t)=y_{e}$, the limit being uniform in $t_{0}$.

Assume that (2.4) has the uniqueness of the solutions with prescribed initial values. Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$. For $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$, let $y=y\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ be the solution of (2.4) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$. This solution is defined on the interval $I\left(t_{0}, \phi\right)=\left[t_{0}-r, t_{0}+\beta\right)$. It is well known that the function $y$ is continuous with respect to the initial value $\phi$. The external formulation of this result is as follows.

Lemma 2.3.2 Let $\phi$ and $\phi_{0} \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$, with $\phi_{0}$ standard. If $\phi(t) \simeq \phi_{0}(t)$ on $[-r, 0]$, then for all $t \in I\left(t_{0}, \phi_{0}\right), t>t_{0}$, such that $t-t_{0}$ is standard, we have $t \in I\left(t_{0}, \phi\right)$ and $y\left(t ; t_{0}, \phi\right) \simeq y\left(t ; t_{0}, \phi_{0}\right)$.

Proof. The reduction of the Lemma 2.3.2 is the usual continuity of solutions with respect to initial values.

Lemma 2.3.3 Assume that (2.4) has the uniqueness of the solutions with prescribed initial values. The equilibrium point $y_{e}$ of (2.4) is uniformly asymptotically stable if and only if there exists a standard $a>0$ that for all $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ any solution $y$ of with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ for which $\left|\phi-y_{e}\right|<a$ can be continued for all $t>t_{0}$ and satisfies $y(t) \simeq y_{e}$ for all $t$ such that $t-t_{0} \simeq+\infty$.

Proof. Assume that $y_{e}$ is uniformly asymptotically stable. Then it is uniformly attractive, and so it admits a ball $\mathcal{B}$ of center $y_{e}$ and radius $b_{0}>0, b_{0}$ standard, as a standard basin of attraction. Let $a>0$ be standard such that the closure of the ball $\mathcal{B}^{\prime}$ of center $y_{e}$ and radius $a$ is inclued in $\mathcal{B}$. Let $\phi$ and $\phi_{0} \in \mathcal{C}_{o}, \phi_{0}$ standard, with $\phi(t) \in \mathcal{B}^{\prime}$ and $\phi_{0}(t) \in \mathcal{B}$ for all $t \in[-r, 0]$. Assume that $\phi(t) \simeq \phi_{0}(t)$ for all $t \in[-r, 0]$. For $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$, let $y=y\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ and $y_{0}=y_{0}\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi_{0}\right)$ be the solutions of (2.4) with initial values $\phi$ and $\phi_{0}$, respectively. By the uniform attractivity of $y_{e}$, the solution $y_{0}$ is defined for all $t>t_{0}$ and satisfies $y_{0}(t) \simeq y_{e}$ for all $t-t_{0} \simeq+\infty$. By Lemma 2.3.2, $y(t) \simeq y_{0}(t)$ on $\left[t_{0}, t_{0}+L\right]$ for all limited $L>0$. By Robinson's Lemma (Appendix A, section A.4, Lemma A.4.1), there exists $\nu \simeq+\infty$ such that $y(t) \simeq y_{0}(t)$ on $\left[t_{0}, t_{0}+\nu\right]$. Thus $y(t) \simeq y_{e}$ for all $t \leq t_{0}+\nu, t-t_{0} \simeq+\infty$, and in particular we have $y(t) \simeq y_{e}$ for all $t \in\left[t_{0}+\nu-r, t_{0}+\nu\right]$. By uniform stability of $y_{e}$ we have $y(t) \simeq y_{e}$ for all $t>t_{0}+\nu$. Hence $y(t) \simeq y_{e}$ for all $t$ such that $t-t_{0} \simeq+\infty$. Conversely, assume $y_{e}$ satisfies the property in the lemma. By Lemma 2.3.1, 2., the ball $\mathcal{B}^{\prime}$ is a standard basin of attraction of $y_{e}$. Hence $y_{e}$ is uniformly attractive. Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ such that $\phi(t) \simeq y_{e}$ for all $t \in[-r, 0]$. For $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$, let that $\phi(t) \simeq y_{e}$ for all $t \in[-r, 0]$. For $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$, let By hypothesis we have $y(t) \simeq y_{e}$ for all $t$ such that $t-t_{0} \simeq+\infty$, and by Lemma 2.3.2, $y(t)=y\left(t ; t_{0}, \phi\right) \simeq y\left(t ; t_{0}, y_{e}\right)=y_{e}$ for all $t$ such that $t-t_{0}$ is limited. By Lemma 2.3.1, 1., $y_{e}$ is uniformly stable. Thus $y_{e}$ is uniformly asymptoticaly stable.

### 2.4 Proofs of Theorems 2.3.1 and 2.3.2

### 2.4.1 Preliminary lemmas

Hereafter we give some results we need for the proof of Theorem 2.3.1. We assume throughout this section that $f$ and $\phi$ are standard. We suppose also that $f$ satisfies conditions (H0), (H1) and (H2) of Theorem 2.3.1. The conditions (H1) and (H2) will be used in their following external forms
(H1') $\quad \forall^{s t} x \in U \quad \forall x^{\prime} \in U \quad \forall \tau \in \mathbb{R}_{+}: \quad x^{\prime} \simeq x \Longrightarrow f\left(\tau, x^{\prime}\right) \simeq f(\tau, x)$.
(H2') There is a standard function $f^{o}: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ such that

$$
\forall^{s t} x \in U \quad \forall T \simeq+\infty: \quad f^{o}(x) \simeq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, x) d \tau
$$

Lemma 2.4.1 The function $f^{o}$ is continuous and we have

$$
f^{o}(x) \simeq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, x) d \tau
$$

for all $x$ nearstandard in $U$ and all $T \simeq+\infty$.
Proof. ([8, Lemma 4, page 106]). Let $x,{ }^{o} x \in U$ such that ${ }^{o} x$ is standard and $x \simeq{ }^{o} x$. Let $\nu>0$ be infinitesimal. By condition (H2) there exists $T_{0}>0$ such that, for $T>T_{0}$

$$
\left\|f^{o}(x)-\frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, x) d \tau\right\|<\nu
$$

Hence for some $T \simeq+\infty$ we have

$$
f^{o}(x) \simeq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, x) d \tau
$$

By condition (H1') we have $f(\tau, x) \simeq f\left(\tau,{ }^{o} x\right)$ for $\tau \geq 0$. Therefore

$$
f^{o}(x) \simeq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f\left(\tau,{ }^{o} x\right) d \tau
$$

By condition (H2') we deduce that $f^{o}(x) \simeq f^{o}\left({ }^{o} x\right)$. Thus $f^{o}$ is continuous. Moreover for $T \simeq+\infty$ we have

$$
f^{o}(x) \simeq f^{o}\left({ }^{o} x\right) \simeq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f\left(\tau,{ }^{o} x\right) d \tau \simeq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, x) d \tau
$$

Lemma 2.4.2 There exists $\mu>0$ such that whenever $t \geq 0$ is limited and $x$ is nearstandard in $U$, there is $\alpha>0$ such that $\mu<\alpha \simeq 0$ and

$$
\frac{\varepsilon}{\alpha} \int_{t / \varepsilon}^{t / \varepsilon+\alpha / \varepsilon} f(\tau, x) d \tau \simeq f^{o}(x)
$$

Proof. ([8, Lemma 5, page 107]). Let $t \geq 0$ be limited and let $x$ be nearstandard in $U$.
i) Suppose $t / \varepsilon$ is limited. Let $S>0$ be unlimited such that $\varepsilon S \simeq 0$. Then

$$
\frac{1}{S} \int_{t / \varepsilon}^{t / \varepsilon+S} f(\tau, x) d \tau=\left(1+\frac{t}{\varepsilon S}\right) \frac{1}{t / \varepsilon+S} \int_{0}^{t / \varepsilon+S} f(\tau, x) d \tau-\frac{1}{S} \int_{0}^{t / \varepsilon} f(\tau, x) d \tau
$$

By Lemma 2.4.1 we have

$$
\frac{1}{t / \varepsilon+S} \int_{0}^{t / \varepsilon+S} f(\tau, x) d \tau \simeq f^{o}(x)
$$

Since

$$
\frac{1}{S} \int_{0}^{t / \varepsilon} f(\tau, x) d \tau \simeq 0 \quad \text { and } \quad \frac{t}{\varepsilon S} \simeq 0
$$

we have

$$
\frac{1}{S} \int_{t / \varepsilon}^{t / \varepsilon+S} f(\tau, x) d \tau \simeq f^{o}(x)
$$

Then, it suffices to choose $\mu=\varepsilon$ and take $\alpha=\varepsilon S$.
ii) Suppose $t / \varepsilon$ is unlimited. Let $S>0$. We write

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{S} \int_{t / \varepsilon}^{t / \varepsilon+S} f(\tau, x) d \tau= & \frac{1}{t / \varepsilon+S} \int_{0}^{t / \varepsilon+S} f(\tau, x) d \tau \\
& +\frac{t}{\varepsilon S}\left(\frac{1}{t / \varepsilon+S} \int_{0}^{t / \varepsilon+S} f(\tau, x) d \tau-\frac{1}{t / \varepsilon} \int_{0}^{t / \varepsilon} f(\tau, x) d \tau\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

By Lemma 2.4.1 we have

$$
\frac{1}{t / \varepsilon+S} \int_{0}^{t / \varepsilon+S} f(\tau, x) d \tau \simeq f^{o}(x) \simeq \frac{1}{t / \varepsilon} \int_{0}^{t / \varepsilon} f(\tau, x) d \tau
$$

Let us denote by

$$
\eta(S)=\frac{t}{\varepsilon S}\left(\frac{1}{t / \varepsilon+S} \int_{0}^{t / \varepsilon+S} f(\tau, x) d \tau-\frac{1}{t / \varepsilon} \int_{0}^{t / \varepsilon} f(\tau, x) d \tau\right)
$$

$\eta(S)$ is infinitesimal for all $S$ such that $t / \varepsilon S$ is limited. By permanence (Cauchy principle, see Appendix A, section A.4) this property holds for some $S$ for which $t / \varepsilon S$ is unlimited. $S$ can be choosen so that $S>1$ and $t / \varepsilon S \simeq+\infty$. Since $t$ is limited we have $\varepsilon S \simeq 0$. Then, it suffices to choose $\mu=\varepsilon$ and take $\alpha=\varepsilon S$.

Lemma 2.4.3 Let $L_{1}>0$ be standard and let $\tilde{x}$ be a function defined on $\left[-r, L_{1}\right]$. We assume that $\tilde{x}$ is continuous on $[-r, 0], \tilde{x}(t)$ is nearstandard in $U$ for all $t \in$ $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$. Then there exist some positive integer $\omega$ and some partition $\left\{t_{n}: n=\right.$ $0, \ldots, \omega+1\}$ of $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$ such that $0=t_{0}<\cdots<t_{n}<t_{n+1}<\cdots<t_{\omega} \leq L_{1}<t_{\omega+1}$, $t_{n+1}-t_{n}=\alpha_{n} \simeq 0$, and

$$
\frac{\varepsilon}{\alpha_{n}} \int_{t_{n} / \varepsilon}^{t_{n} / \varepsilon+\alpha_{n} / \varepsilon} f\left(\tau, \tilde{x}\left(t_{n}-r\right)\right) d \tau \simeq f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}\left(t_{n}-r\right)\right)
$$

Proof. Consider the set $A=\left\{\lambda \in \mathbb{R} / \forall t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right] \exists \alpha \in \mathbb{R}: \mathcal{P}(t, \alpha, \lambda)\right\}$ where

$$
\mathcal{P}(t, \alpha, \lambda) \equiv \mu<\alpha<\lambda \quad \text { and } \quad\left\|\frac{\varepsilon}{\alpha} \int_{t / \varepsilon}^{t / \varepsilon+\alpha / \varepsilon} f(\tau, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)) d \tau-f^{o}(\tilde{x}(t-r))\right\|<\lambda
$$

By Lemma 2.4.2 the set $A$ contains all the standard real numbers $\lambda>0$. By Lemma A.4.4 (Appendix A) there exists $\lambda_{0} \simeq 0$ in $A$, that is, there exists $0<\lambda_{0} \simeq 0$ such that for all $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$ there exists $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $\mathcal{P}\left(t, \alpha, \lambda_{0}\right)$ holds. By the axiom of choise there exists a function $c:\left[0, L_{1}\right] \longrightarrow \mathbb{R} c:\left[0, L_{1}\right] \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that $c(t)=\alpha$, that is, $\mathcal{P}\left(t, c(t), \lambda_{0}\right)$ holds for all $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$. Since $c(t)>\mu$ for all $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$, the conclusion of the

Lemma 2.4.4 Let $L_{1}>0$ be standard and let $\tilde{x}$ be a function defined on $\left[-r, L_{1}\right]$. We assume that $\tilde{x}$ is continuous on $[-r, 0], \tilde{x}(t)$ is nearstandard in $U$ for all $t \in$ $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$, and satisfies $\tilde{x}(t) \simeq \tilde{x}\left(t_{n}\right)$ for all $t \in\left[t_{n}, t_{n+1}\right]$ with $0=t_{0}<\cdots<t_{n}<$ $t_{n+1}<\cdots<t_{\omega} \leq L_{1}<t_{\omega+1}$ and $t_{n+1}-t_{n}=\alpha_{n} \simeq 0$, where the $t_{n}$ are determined by Lemma 2.4.3. Then

$$
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right) d \tau \simeq \int_{0}^{t} f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r)) d \tau \quad \forall t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]
$$

Proof. Let $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$ and let $N$ be a positive integer such that $t_{N} \leq t<t_{N+1}$. We have

$$
\begin{align*}
\int_{0}^{t} f( & \left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right) d \tau-\int_{0}^{t} f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r)) d \tau \\
& =\int_{0}^{t}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right)-f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r))\right) d \tau \\
= & \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right)-f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r))\right) d \tau  \tag{2.11}\\
& \quad+\int_{t_{N}}^{t}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right)-f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r))\right) d \tau \\
\simeq & \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right)-f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r))\right) d \tau
\end{align*}
$$

since

$$
\begin{aligned}
\| \int_{t_{N}}^{t} & \left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right)-f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r))\right) d \tau \| \\
& \leq \int_{t_{N}}^{t}\left(\left\|f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right)\right\|+\left\|f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r))\right\|\right) d \tau \\
& \leq 2 M\left(t-t_{N}\right) \leq 2 M\left(t_{N+1}-t_{N}\right) \leq 2 M \alpha \simeq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\alpha=\max \left\{\alpha_{n}\right\} \simeq 0$ (see Appendix A, Lemma A.4.2) and $M$ is a bound for $f$ and then for $f^{o}$ too. $M$ is standard.

On the other hand, it is easy to verify that $\tilde{x}(\tau-r) \simeq \tilde{x}\left(t_{n}-r\right)=$ cte $:=\tilde{x}_{n}$ for $\tau \in\left[t_{n}, t_{n+1}\right]$. By the continuity of $f$, the condition (H1') and Lemma 2.4.1 (the continuity of $f^{\circ}$ ) it follows, respectively, that

$$
f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right) \simeq f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}_{n}\right), \quad f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r)) \simeq f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}_{n}\right)
$$

or

$$
f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right)=f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}_{n}\right)+\gamma_{n}(\tau), \quad f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r))=f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}_{n}\right)+\delta_{n}(\tau)
$$

with

$$
\gamma_{n}(\tau) \simeq 0 \simeq \delta_{n}(\tau)
$$

Hence, from (2.11) we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{0}^{t} f( & \left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right) d \tau-\int_{0}^{t} f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r)) d \tau \\
& \simeq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}_{n}\right)-f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}_{n}\right)+\gamma_{n}(\tau)+\delta_{n}(\tau)\right) d \tau \\
& =\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}_{n}\right)-f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}_{n}\right)\right) d \tau+\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(\gamma_{n}(\tau)+\delta_{n}(\tau)\right) d \tau \\
& \simeq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}_{n}\right)-f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}_{n}\right)\right) d \tau+\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\left(\gamma_{n}+\delta_{n}\right) \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}} d \tau, \\
& \simeq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}_{n}\right)-f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}_{n}\right)\right) d \tau+(\gamma+\delta) \sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\left(t_{n+1}-t_{n}\right), \\
& =\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}_{n}\right)-f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}_{n}\right)\right) d \tau+(\gamma+\delta) \cdot t_{N},
\end{aligned}
$$

with $\gamma_{n}(\tau) \simeq \delta_{n}(\tau) \simeq 0$ for $\tau \in\left[t_{n}, t_{n+1}\right]$ and where $\gamma_{n}+\delta_{n}=\sup _{\tau \in\left[t_{n}, t_{n+1}\right]}\{\gamma(\tau)\}+$ $\sup _{\tau \in\left[t_{n}, t_{n+1}\right]}\{\delta(\tau)\} \simeq 0$ and $\gamma+\delta=\max \left\{\gamma_{n}\right\}+\max \left\{\delta_{n}\right\} \simeq 0$ (see Appendix A, Lemma A.4.2).

Since $L_{1}$ is standard and $t_{N} \in\left[0, L_{1}\right], t_{N}$ is limited and then $(\gamma+\delta) . t_{N} \simeq 0$. Therefore,

$$
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right) d \tau-\int_{0}^{t} f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r)) d \tau \simeq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}_{n}\right)-f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}_{n}\right)\right) d \tau
$$

By Lemma 2.4.2, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}} \quad(f & \left.\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}_{n}\right)-f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}_{n}\right)\right) d \tau \\
& =\int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n}+\alpha_{n}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}_{n}\right)-f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}_{n}\right)\right) d \tau \\
& =\int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n}+\alpha_{n}} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}_{n}\right) d \tau-\int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n}+\alpha_{n}} f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}_{n}\right) d \tau \\
& =\int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n}+\alpha_{n}} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}_{n}\right) d \tau-\alpha_{n} \cdot f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}_{n}\right) \\
& =\varepsilon \int_{t_{n} / \varepsilon}^{t_{n} / \varepsilon+\alpha_{n} / \varepsilon} f\left(s, \tilde{x}_{n}\right) d s-\alpha_{n} \cdot f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}_{n}\right), \quad \text { where } s=\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon} \\
& =\alpha_{n}\left(\frac{\varepsilon}{\alpha_{n}} \int_{t_{n} / \varepsilon}^{t_{n} / \varepsilon+\alpha_{n} / \varepsilon} f\left(s, \tilde{x}_{n}\right) d s-f^{o}\left(\tilde{x}_{n}\right)\right) \\
& =\alpha_{n} \cdot \beta_{n} \quad \text { with } \beta_{n} \simeq 0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right) d \tau-\int_{0}^{t} f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r)) d \tau & \simeq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \alpha_{n} \cdot \beta_{n} \\
& \simeq \beta \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \alpha_{n}, \quad \text { where } \beta=\max \left\{\beta_{n}\right\} \\
& =\beta \sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\left(t_{n+1}-t_{n}\right)=\beta \cdot t_{N}
\end{aligned}
$$

By Lemma A.4.2 (Appendix A), $\beta \simeq 0$ and then $\beta \cdot t_{N} \simeq 0$. This implies the lemma.

Lemma 2.4.5 Let $L_{1}>0$ be standard and let $x$ be a solution of (2.1) with initial value $\phi$ at 0 . Assume that $\left[0, L_{1}\right] \subset I$ and $x(t)$ is nearstandard for all $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$. Then $x$ is $S$-continuous on $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$ and its shadow on $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$ coincides with the solution $y=y(. ; 0, \phi)$ of (2.2) on this interval, and satisfies $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for all $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$.

Proof. The solution $x$ is given as

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=\phi(0)+\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x(\tau-r)\right) d \tau, \quad \text { for } t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right] . \tag{2.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

As $f$ is bounded on $\mathbb{R}_{+} \times U$, it is clear that $x$ is S -continuous on $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$.
Let $\tilde{x}$ be a function which satisfies hypotheses of Lemma 2.4.4 and such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t) \simeq \tilde{x}(t), \quad \forall t \in\left[-r, L_{1}\right] . \tag{2.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider now the following equality which is always true

$$
\begin{align*}
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon},\right. & x(\tau-r)) d \tau-\int_{0}^{t} f^{o}(x(\tau-r)) d \tau \\
= & \int_{0}^{t}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x(\tau-r)\right)-f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right)\right) d \tau  \tag{2.14}\\
& +\int_{0}^{t}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right)-f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r))\right) d \tau \\
& +\int_{0}^{t}\left(f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r))-f^{o}(x(\tau-r))\right) d \tau
\end{align*}
$$

As $x(t)$ is nearstandard in $U$ for any $t \in\left[-r, L_{1}\right]$, by the continuity of $f$, the condition (H1') and (2.13), we have

$$
f\left(\frac{t}{\varepsilon}, x(t-r)\right) \simeq f\left(\frac{t}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(t-r)\right)
$$

and by Lemma A.4.3 (Appendix A),

$$
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x(\tau-r)\right) d \tau \simeq \int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right) d \tau
$$

On the other hand, by Lemma 2.4.1 (the continuity of $f^{\circ}$ ) and by (2.13), we have

$$
f^{o}(\tilde{x}(t-r)) \simeq f^{o}(x(t-r))
$$

and by Lemma A.4.3 (Appendix A), we obtain

$$
\int_{0}^{t} f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r)) d \tau \simeq \int_{0}^{t} f^{o}(x(\tau-r)) d \tau
$$

By Lemma 2.4.4, for any $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$, we have

$$
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, \tilde{x}(\tau-r)\right) d \tau \simeq \int_{0}^{t} f^{o}(\tilde{x}(\tau-r)) d \tau
$$

Hence, for $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$, (2.14) implies that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x(\tau-r)\right) d \tau \simeq \int_{0}^{t} f^{o}(x(\tau-r)) d \tau \tag{2.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using (2.12) and (2.15), we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
x(t) & =\phi(0)+\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x(\tau-r)\right) d \tau \\
& \simeq \phi(0)+\int_{0}^{t} f^{o}(x(\tau-r)) d \tau .
\end{aligned}
$$

Let ${ }^{o} x$ be the shadow of $x$ on $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$. It is easy to see that the function $z$ such that

$$
z(t)= \begin{cases}{ }^{o} x(t), & \text { for } t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right] \\ \phi(t), & \text { for } t \in[-r, 0]\end{cases}
$$

is a solution of (2.2). The hypothesis (H3) insure that $z=y$ on $\left[-r, L_{1}\right]$. Hence, we have $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$.

### 2.4.2 Proof of Theorem 2.3.1

Let $L>0$ be standard in $J$. Since $\Gamma=y([0, L])$ is a standard compact subset of $U$, there exists $\rho>0, \rho$ standard, and $K$, a standard compact neighborhood of $\Gamma$ inclued in $U$, such that $\operatorname{dist}(\Gamma, K)=\inf \left\{\|y-z\| / y \in \Gamma, z \in \mathbb{R}^{n}-K\right\}>\rho$. Let $x: I \rightarrow U$ be a solution of (2.1) with initial value $\phi$ at 0 . Define the set $A=\left\{L_{1} \in I \cap[0, L] / x\left(\left[0, L_{1}\right]\right) \subset K\right\} . A$ is non empty $(0 \in A)$ and bounded above by $L$. Let $L_{0}$ be a lower upper bound of $A$. There is $L_{1} \in A$ such that $L_{0}-\varepsilon<L_{1} \leq L_{0}$. Thus $x\left(\left[0, L_{1}\right]\right) \subset K$. Hence on $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$ the function $x$ is nearstandard in $U$. By Lemma 2.4.5, we have $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$. Consider the interval $\left[0, L_{1}+\varepsilon\right]$. Let $t \in\left[0, L_{1}+\varepsilon\right]$. As $t-r$ is in $\left[-r, L_{1}+\varepsilon-r\right] \subset\left[-r, L_{1}\right]$, $x(t-r)$ is defined and so is

$$
x(t)=\phi(0)+\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x(\tau-r)\right) d \tau
$$

On the other hand, we have, for $t \in\left[L_{1}, L_{1}+\varepsilon\right], x(t) \simeq x\left(L_{1}\right) \simeq y\left(L_{1}\right)$ with $y\left(L_{1}\right)$ nearstandard in $U$. Hence, on $\left[L_{1}, L_{1}+\varepsilon\right], x$ is nearstandard in $U$. Thus, on [ $\left.0, L_{1}+\varepsilon\right], x$ is defined and nearstandard in $U$. By Lemma 2.4.5, we have $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for $t \in\left[0, L_{1}+\varepsilon\right]$. Hence $\left[0, L_{1}+\varepsilon\right] \subset I$ and $x\left(\left[0, L_{1}+\varepsilon\right]\right) \subset K$. Suppose $L_{1}+\varepsilon \leq L$, then $L_{1}+\varepsilon \in A$ which is a contradiction. Thus $L_{1}+\varepsilon>L$, that is, we have $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for all $t \in[0, L] \subset\left[0, L_{1}+\varepsilon\right]$.

### 2.4.3 Proof of Theorem 2.3.2

By condition (H5) and the uniform attractivity of $y_{e}$ (see Lemma 2.3.1, 2.), the solution $y$ is defined for all $t>0$ and satisfies $y(t) \simeq y_{e}$ for all $t \simeq+\infty$. Let $x: I \rightarrow U$ be a solution of (2.1) with initial value $\phi$ at 0 . By Theorem 2.3.1, for all limited $L>0, x$ is defined on $[0, L]$ and the approximation $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ holds for all $t \in[0, L]$. By Robinson's Lemma (Appendix A, section A.4, Lemma A.4.1), there exists $t_{1} \simeq+\infty$ such that $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ on $\left[0, t_{1}\right]$. And then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t) \simeq y(t) \simeq y_{e}, \quad \forall t \leq t_{1}, \quad t \simeq+\infty \tag{2.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

It remains to prove that $x$ is defined for all $t \geq t_{1}$ and satisfies $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for all $t>t_{1}$. Assume that this is false. Then there exists $s>t_{1}$ such that $x(s) \nsucceq y(s)$, that is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|x(s)-y(s)\|=\frac{2}{3} \kappa \tag{2.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

is appreciable. Since $y(t) \simeq y_{e}$ for all $t \simeq+\infty$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|x(s)-y_{e}\right\| \leq\|x(s)-y(s)\|+\left\|y(s)-y_{e}\right\| \leq \frac{2}{3} \kappa+\frac{\kappa}{3}=\kappa . \tag{2.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $\mathcal{B}$, the ball of center $y_{e}$ and radius $b_{0}>0, b_{0}$ standard, be the basin of attraction of $y_{e}$. We can choose $s$ in (2.18) so that the ball $\mathcal{B}^{\prime}$ of center $y_{e}$ and radius $\kappa$ is
inclued in $\mathcal{B}$, with $b_{0}-\kappa$ appreciable. Let $t_{2}$ be the first instant in time such that equality (2.17) holds. Clearly $t_{2}>t_{1}$.

Case 1. $t_{1,2}=t_{2}-t_{1} \simeq+\infty$.
Redefine in (2.2) initial time $r=t_{0}$. Let $z_{1}\left(. ; r, x, t_{2}\right)$ denote the solution of (2.2) such that $z_{1}\left(t ; r, x, t_{2}\right)=x\left(t_{2}-t\right)$ for $t \in[0, r]$. By Theorem 2.3.1 and Remark 2.3.1, for all limited $L>0, z_{1}\left(. ; r, x, t_{2}\right)$ is defined on $[r, r+L]$ and satisfies $z_{1}\left(t ; r, x, t_{2}\right) \simeq$ $x\left(t_{2}-t\right)$ for $t \in[r, r+L]$. By Robinson's Lemma (Appendix A, section A.4, Lemma A.4.1), there exists $\bar{t}_{1,2} \simeq+\infty$, which one can choose such that $r+\bar{t}_{1,2} \leq t_{1,2}$, with the property that $z_{1}\left(t ; r, x, t_{2}\right) \simeq x\left(t_{2}-t\right)$ on $\left[r, r+\bar{t}_{1,2}\right]$. In particular, $z_{1}\left(t ; r, x, t_{2}\right) \simeq$ $x\left(t_{2}-t\right)$ on $\left[t_{1,2}, r+\bar{t}_{1,2}\right] \subset\left[0, t_{1,2}\right]$. Since $x(t)$ belongs to $\mathcal{B}^{\prime}$ for all $t \in\left[t_{1}, t_{2}\right]$, $x\left(t_{2}-t\right)$ lies in $\mathcal{B}^{\prime}$ for all $t \in\left[0, t_{1,2}\right]$. This implies that $z_{1}\left(t ; r, x, t_{2}\right)$ is in $\mathcal{B}$ for all $t \in\left[\bar{t}_{1,2}, r+\bar{t}_{1,2}\right]$. By the uniform attractivity of $y_{e}$ (see Lemma 2.3.3), through the transformation $t \longmapsto-t$, the solution of (2.2) with initial value $z_{1}\left(-t ; r, x, t_{2}\right)$ for $t \in\left[-r-\bar{t}_{1,2},-\bar{t}_{1,2}\right]$ which coincides with $z_{1}\left(. ; r, x, t_{2}\right)$ (by uniqueness; hypothesis (H3)) is defined for all $t>-\bar{t}_{1,2}$ and satisfies $z_{1}\left(-t ; r, x, t_{2}\right) \simeq y_{e}$ for $t+\bar{t}_{1,2} \simeq+\infty$. Take $t=0$, then $x\left(t_{2}\right) \simeq z_{1}\left(0 ; r, x, t_{2}\right) \simeq y_{e}$. Since $y\left(t_{2}\right) \simeq y_{e}$, this implies that $x\left(t_{2}\right) \simeq y\left(t_{2}\right)$. Which is a contradiction with $\left\|x\left(t_{2}\right)-y\left(t_{2}\right)\right\|$ being appreciable.

Case 2. $t_{1,2}=t_{2}-t_{1}$ is limited.
By the continuity of the function $\|x(t)-y(t)\|$, there exists at least $t \in\left(t_{1}, t_{2}\right)$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|x(t)-y(t)\|=\frac{\kappa}{2} . \tag{2.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $t_{3}$ and $t_{4}$, respectively, the first and the last instants in time such that equality (2.19) holds. We have $t_{1}<t_{3} \leq t_{4}<t_{2}$. It is clear that

$$
\|x(t)-y(t)\|<\frac{\kappa}{2}, \quad \forall t \in\left[t_{1}, t_{3}\right)
$$

It is also clear that

$$
\begin{equation*}
0<\frac{\kappa}{2} \leq\|x(t)-y(t)\| \leq \frac{2}{3} \kappa, \quad \forall t \in\left[t_{4}, t_{2}\right] . \tag{2.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Redefine in (2.2) initial time $t_{1}=t_{0}$. Let $z\left(. ; t_{1}, x\right)$ denote the solution of (2.2) such that $z\left(t ; t_{1}, x\right)=x(t)$ for $t \in\left[t_{1}-r, t_{1}\right]$. By (2.16) we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
z\left(t ; t_{1}, x\right)=x(t) \simeq y(t) \simeq y_{e}, \quad \text { for } t \in\left[t_{1}-r, t_{1}\right] . \tag{2.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $t_{4}-t_{1}$ is limited, according to Theorem 2.3.1 and Remark 2.3.1

$$
z\left(t ; t_{1}, x\right) \simeq x(t), \quad \text { on }\left[t_{1}, t_{4}+L\right]=\left[t_{1}, t_{1}+\left(\left(t_{4}-t_{1}\right)+L\right)\right], \quad \forall \text { limited } L>0
$$

By Robinson's Lemma (Appendix A, section A.4, Lemma A.4.1), there exists $\omega \simeq$ $+\infty$ such that $z\left(t ; t_{1}, x\right) \simeq x(t)$ on $\left[t_{1}, t_{4}+\omega\right]$. Thus we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
z\left(t ; t_{1}, x\right) \simeq x(t), \quad \text { on }\left[t_{1}, t_{5}\right], \quad \text { where } t_{5}=t_{4}+\omega . \tag{2.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

By (2.21) and the uniform stability of $y_{e}$ (see Lemma 2.3.1,1.) we deduce that

$$
\begin{equation*}
z\left(t ; t_{1}, x\right) \simeq y(t)\left(\simeq y_{e}\right), \quad \forall t \geq t_{1} \tag{2.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, by (2.22) and (2.23)

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t) \simeq y(t), \quad \forall t \in\left[t_{1}, t_{5}\right] . \tag{2.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore $t_{5}<t_{2}$ since $\left\|x\left(t_{2}\right)-y\left(t_{2}\right)\right\|$ is appreciable.
Take $t=t_{5}$. By (2.24) we have $x\left(t_{5}\right) \simeq y\left(t_{5}\right)$. This contradicts (2.20) since $t_{5} \in\left[t_{4}, t_{2}\right]$.

### 2.5 Bibliography

[1] N. N. Bogoliubov and Y. A. Mitropolsky, "Asymptotic Methods in the Theory of Nonlinear Oscillations", Hindustan Publushing Corp., Delh, Gordon and Breach Science Publishers, New York, 1961.
[2] A. Halanay, On the method of averaging for differential equations with retarded argument, J. Math. Anal. Appl. 14 (1966), 70-76.
[3] J.K. Hale, Averaging methods for differential equations with retarded arguments, J. Differ. Equations 2 (1966), 57-73.
[4] J.K. Hale and S.M. Verduyn Lunel, Averaging in infinite dimensions, J. Integral Equations Appl. 2, no. 4 (1990), 463-493.
[5] M. Lakrib, The method of averaging and functional differential equations with delay, Inter. J. Math. \& Math. Sci., vol. 26, issue 8 (2001), 497-511.
[6] P. Lochak and C. Meunier, "Multiphase Averaging for Classical Systems", Appl. Math. Sciences, vol. 72, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1988.
[7] J.A. Sanders and F. Verhulst, "Averaging Methods in Nonlinear Dynamical Systems", Appl. Math. Sciences, vol. 59, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1985.
[8] T. Sari, Stroboscopy and averaging, Colloque Trajectorien à la Mémoire de Georges Reeb et Jean-Louis Callot (Strasbourg-Obernai, 1995), A. Fruchard et A. Troesch, Editeurs. Univ. Louis Pasteur, Strasbourg, 1995, 95-124.
[9] M. Yebdri, Equations différentielles à retard, Thèse de Magister, Université de Tlemcen, 1989.

## Chapter 3

## Averaging method for functional differential equations

This chapter essentially contains the paper [10] " Averaging method for functional differential equations", (Submitted for publication).

The method of averaging is extended, in a natural way, to functional differential equations. The first result given here generalizes the corresponding one in [Chap.2, Theorem 2.2.1].

### 3.1 Introduction

There is a rich literature on the method of averaging for ordinary differential equations (cf. $[1,2,6,8,11,13,14]$ and the references cited therein). The method is also extended to functional differential equations $[3,4,5,12,15,16]$ of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}(t)=\varepsilon f\left(t, x_{t}\right) \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\varepsilon>0$ is a small parameter. Under suitable conditions, solutions of (3.1) can be approximated by those ones of the averaged ordinary differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{y}(t)=\varepsilon f^{o}(\tilde{y}), \quad \tilde{y}(\theta)=y \quad \text { for } \theta \in[-r, 0] \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
f^{o}(u)=\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, u) d \tau \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Notice that, if we let $t \longmapsto t / \varepsilon$ and $x(t / \varepsilon)=z(t)$, equation (3.1) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{z}(t)=f\left(\frac{t}{\varepsilon}, z_{t, \varepsilon}\right) \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $z_{t, \varepsilon}(\theta)=z(t+\varepsilon \theta), \theta \in[-r, 0]$, which is an equation with a small delay.

The purpose of this chapter is to consider a functional differential equation in the general case, that is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}(t)=f\left(\frac{t}{\varepsilon}, x_{t}\right) \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

and to show that solutions of (3.5) may be approximed by those ones of the averaged equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{y}(t)=f^{o}\left(y_{t}\right) \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $f^{o}$ is given in (3.3). Notice that (3.6) is a functional differential equation and not an ordinary differential equation.

Among authors who studied equation (3.5), we will cite Hale and Verduyn Lunel. In [7], the cited authors introduce an extension of the method of averaging to abstract evolutionary equations in Banach spaces. In particular, they rewrite a functional differential equation as an ordinary differential equation in an infinite dimensional Banach space and proceed formally from there. Our approach is different since all the analysis is kept in the associated natural phase space.

This chapter is organized as follows. In Section 3.2, we state closeness of solutions of the original and averaged equations on finite time intervals (Theorem 3.2.1). This result generalizes the corresponding one of [9] and then its proof is directly related to [9] (and [14]). We also investigate the long time behaviour of solutions of the original equation (Theorem 3.2.2). This is done under the assumption that the averaged equation has an exponentially stable equilibrium. For this case, the idea of the proof is the same one used for ordinary differential equations in [13]. In Section 3.3 we present the nonstandard translates (Theorems 3.3.1 and 3.3.2) in the language of Internal Set Theory (see Appendix A) of Theorem 3.2.1 and 3.2.2. Finally, in Section 3.4 we first begin with some preliminary lemmas and then give the proofs of Theorems 3.3.1 and 3.3.2.

### 3.2 Main Results

In this section we state hypotheses and present the main results on averaging for functional differential equations.

First, let us assume that the following conditions are satisfied:
(H1) The functional $f$ is continuous and bounded on $\mathbb{R}_{+} \times \mathcal{C}_{o}$.
(H2) The continuity of $f=f(\tau, u)$ in $u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ is uniform with respect to $\tau \in \mathbb{R}_{+}$.
(H3) For all $u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ there exists a limit

$$
f^{o}(u):=\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, u) d \tau
$$

(H4) The averaged equation (3.6) has the uniqueness of the solutions with the prescribed initial conditions.

Remark 3.2.1 In hypothesis (H4) we anticipate the existence of solutions of (3.6). We will justify this a posteriori. Endeed, in Lemma 3.4.1 below we will show that $f^{o}$ is continuous so that the existence is guaranteed.

Under the above assumptions, we will prove a theorem on nearness of the solutions of (3.5) and (3.6) with the same initial conditions.

Theorem 3.2.1 (Averaging on Finite Time Intervals) Let the hypotheses (H1) to (H4) hold. Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{0}$ and $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$. Let $y=y\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ be the solution of (3.6), and let $J=\left[t_{0}-r, \omega\right), t_{0}<\omega \leq \infty$, be its maximal interval of definition. Then for any $L>t_{0}, L \in J$, and any $\delta>0$ there exists $\varepsilon_{0}=\varepsilon_{0}(L, \delta)>0$ such that, for $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right]$, any solution $x$ of (3.5) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ is defined at least on $\left[t_{0}, L\right]$ and the inequality $\|x(t)-y(t)\|<\delta$ holds for $t \in\left[t_{0}, L\right]$.

One can also extend the validity of the averaging technique for all (future) time when the solution of (3.6) lies in the domain of exponential stability of an exponentially stable equilibrium. For this, let us first recall the concept of exponential stability of equilibriums.

With the assumption (H4), we suppose that $y_{e}$ is an equilibrium of (3.6), that is, $f^{o}\left(y_{e}\right)=0$.

Definition 3.2.1 $y_{e}$ is said to be exponentially stable if there exist $b, K$ and $\lambda>0$ such that, for all $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ and all $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$, the solution $y=y\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ of (3.6) for which $\left|\phi-y_{e}\right|<b$, is defined on $\left[t_{0}, \infty\right)$ and the inequality $\left\|y(t)-y_{e}\right\| \leq K e^{-\lambda\left(t-t_{0}\right)}\left|\phi-y_{e}\right|$ holds for all $t \geq t_{0}$.

Remark 3.2.2 The ball $\mathcal{B}$ of center $y_{e}$ and radius $b$ where the stability is exponential will be called the domain of exponential stability of $y_{e}$.

As a next result of this section, we will prove validity of the approximation of the solutions of (3.5) and (3.6) with the same initial conditions, for all time.

Theorem 3.2.2 (Averaging for All Time) Let the hypotheses (H1) to (H4) be true. Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{0}$ and $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$. Let $y=y\left(., t_{0}, \phi\right)$ be the solution of (3.6). Assume that
(H5) $y_{e}$ is exponentially stable.
(H6) $\phi$ lies in the domain of exponential stability of $y_{e}$.
Then for any $\delta>0$ there exists $\varepsilon_{0}=\varepsilon_{0}(\delta)>0$ such that, for all $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right]$, any solution $x$ of (3.5) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ is defined on $\left[t_{0}, \infty\right)$ and the inequality $\|x(t)-y(t)\|<\delta$ holds for all $t \geq t_{0}$.

### 3.3 Nonstandard Averaging Results

First we give nonstandard formulations of Theorem 3.2.1 and Theorem 3.2.2. Then, by use of the reduction algorithm, we show that the reduction of Theorem 3.3.1 and Theorem 3.3.2 bellow are Theorem 3.2.1 and Theorem 3.2.2 respectively.

Theorem 3.3.1 Let $f: \mathbb{R} \times \mathcal{C}_{o} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be standard. Assume that all hypotheses in Theorem 3.2.1 hold. Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ and $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ be standard. Let $y=y\left(., t_{0}, \phi\right)$ be the solution of (3.6), and let $J=\left[t_{0}-r, \omega\right), t_{0}<\omega \leq \infty$, be its maximal interval of definition. Let $\varepsilon>0$ be infinitesimal. Then for any standard $L>t_{0}, L \in J$, any solution $x$ of (3.5) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ is defined at least on $\left[t_{0}, L\right]$ and satisfies $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for all $t \in\left[t_{0}, L\right]$.

Theorem 3.3.2 Let $f: \mathbb{R} \times \mathcal{C}_{o} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be standard. Let $y_{e}$ be a standard equilibrium of (3.6). Assume that all hypotheses in Theorem 3.2.2 hold. Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ and $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ be standard. Let $y=y\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ be the solution of (3.6). Let $\varepsilon>0$ be infinitesimal. Then any solution $x$ of (3.5) with initial value $\phi$ at $t_{0}$ is defined on $\left[t_{0}, \infty\right)$ and satisfies $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for all $t \geq t_{0}$.

The proofs of Theorems 3.3.1 and 3.3.2 are postponed to Section 3.4 below. The reduction of Theorems 3.3.1 and 3.3.2 to Theorems 3.2.1 and 3.2.2, respectively, are the same ones as in [Chap.2, subsection 2.3.1].

### 3.4 Proofs of Theorems 3.3.1 and 3.3.2

### 3.4.1 Preliminary Lemmas

First Part: Hereafter we are giving some results we need for the proof of Theorem 3.3.1. We assume that $f: \mathbb{R} \times \mathcal{C}_{o} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ is standard. Let us give external formulations of conditions (H1), (H2) and (H3) respectively:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \forall^{s t} \tau \geq 0 \quad \forall^{s t} u \in \mathcal{C}_{o} \quad \forall \tau^{\prime} \geq 0 \quad \forall u^{\prime} \in \mathcal{C}_{o}:  \tag{H1’}\\
& \tau^{\prime} \simeq \tau \text { and } u^{\prime} \simeq u \Longrightarrow f\left(\tau^{\prime}, u^{\prime}\right) \simeq f(\tau, u)
\end{align*}
$$

And, there exists some standard constant $M$ such that

$$
\forall^{s t} \tau \geq 0 \quad \forall^{s t} u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}:\|f(\tau, u)\| \leq M
$$

(and by transfer (Appendix A, subsection A.2.2) the inequality holds for all $\tau \geq 0$ and $\left.u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}\right)$.
$\left(\mathrm{H} 2{ }^{\prime}\right) \quad \forall^{s t} u \in \mathcal{C}_{o} \quad \forall u^{\prime} \in \mathcal{C}_{o} \quad \forall \tau \geq 0: \quad u^{\prime} \simeq u \Longrightarrow f\left(\tau, u^{\prime}\right) \simeq f(\tau, u)$.
(H3') There is a standard functional $f^{o}: \mathcal{C}_{o} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ such that

$$
\forall^{s t} u \in \mathcal{C}_{o} \quad \forall T \simeq+\infty: \quad f^{o}(u) \simeq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, u) d \tau
$$

Lemma 3.4.1 The functional $f^{o}$ is continuous and satisfies

$$
f^{o}(u) \simeq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, u) d \tau
$$

for all $u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}, u$ nearstandard, and all $T \simeq+\infty$.
Proof. The proof of Lemma 3.4.1 follows almost verbatim the proof in [Chap.2, Lemma 2.4.1, page 20].

Lemma 3.4.2 There exists $\mu>0$ such that whenever $t \geq 0$ is limited and $u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ is nearstandard there exists $\alpha>0$ such that $\mu<\alpha \simeq 0$ and

$$
\frac{\varepsilon}{\alpha} \int_{t / \varepsilon}^{t / \varepsilon+\alpha / \varepsilon} f(\tau, u) d \tau \simeq f^{o}(u)
$$

Proof. The proof of Lemma 3.4.2 follows almost verbatim the proof in [Chap.2, Lemma 2.4.2, page 20].

Lemma 3.4.3 Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ be standard. Let $x$ be a solution of (3.5) with initial value $\phi$ at 0 , let $I=[-r, b)$ be its maximal interval of definition, and let $L_{1}>0$ be standard such that $\left[0, L_{1}\right] \subset I$. Then $x$ is $S$-continuous and nearstandard on $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$, and there exist some positive integer $N_{o}$ and some infinitesimal partition $\left\{t_{n}: n=0, \ldots, N_{o}+1\right\}$ of $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$ such that $t_{0}=0, t_{N_{o}}<L_{1} \leq t_{N_{o}+1}, t_{n+1}=t_{n}+\alpha_{n} \simeq t_{n}$ and

$$
\frac{\varepsilon}{\alpha_{n}} \int_{t_{n} / \varepsilon}^{t_{n} / \varepsilon+\alpha_{n} / \varepsilon} f\left(\tau, x_{t_{n}}\right) d \tau \simeq f^{o}\left(x_{t_{n}}\right) .
$$

Proof. First, as $f$ is bounded on $\mathbb{R}_{+} \times \mathcal{C}_{o}$, it follows that $x$ is S-continuous on $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$. Endeed, if $t \simeq t^{\prime}$, with $t, t^{\prime} \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$ then $\left\|x(t)-x\left(t^{\prime}\right)\right\| \leq M\left|t-t^{\prime}\right| \simeq 0$. Furthermore, for $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$, we have

$$
x(t)=\phi(0)+\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right) d \tau
$$

where $\phi(0)$ is limited. This implies that $x$ is nearstandard on $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$.
Next, define the set $A=\left\{\lambda \in \mathbb{R} / \forall t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right] \exists \alpha \in \mathbb{R}: \mathcal{P}(t, \alpha, \lambda)\right\}$ where

$$
\mathcal{P}(t, \alpha, \lambda) \equiv \mu<\alpha<\lambda \quad \text { and } \quad\left\|\frac{\varepsilon}{\alpha} \int_{t / \varepsilon}^{t / \varepsilon+\alpha / \varepsilon} f\left(\tau, x_{t}\right) d \tau-f^{o}\left(x_{t}\right)\right\|<\lambda .
$$

By Lemma 3.4.2 the set $A$ contains all the standard real numbers $\lambda>0$. By Lemma A.4.4 (Appendix A) there exists $\lambda_{0} \simeq 0$ in $A$, that is, there exists $0<\lambda_{0} \simeq 0$ such that for all $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$ there exists $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $\mathcal{P}\left(t, \alpha, \lambda_{0}\right)$ holds. By the axiom of choise there exists a function $c:\left[0, L_{1}\right] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that $c(t)=\alpha$, that is, $\mathcal{P}\left(t, c(t), \lambda_{0}\right)$ holds for all $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$. Since $c(t)>\mu$ for all $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$, the conclusion of the lemma is immediate.

Lemma 3.4.4 Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ be standard. Let $x$ be a solution of (3.5) with initial value $\phi$ at 0 , let $I=[-r, b)$ be its maximal interval of definition, and let $L_{1}>0$ be standard such that $\left[0, L_{1}\right] \subset I$. Then for all $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$

$$
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right) d \tau \simeq \int_{0}^{t} f^{o}\left(x_{\tau}\right) d \tau
$$

Proof. By Lemma 3.4.3 there exists $\left\{t_{n}: n=0, \ldots, N_{o}+1\right\}$ such that $t_{0}=0$, $t_{N_{o}}<L_{1} \leq t_{N_{o}+1}, t_{n+1}=t_{n}+\alpha_{n} \simeq t_{n}$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\varepsilon}{\alpha_{n}} \int_{t_{n} / \varepsilon}^{t_{n} / \varepsilon+\alpha_{n} / \varepsilon} f\left(\tau, x_{t_{n}}\right) d \tau \simeq f^{o}\left(x_{t_{n}}\right) \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$, and let $N$ be a positive integer such that $t_{N}<t \leq t_{N+1}$. We have

$$
\begin{align*}
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right) d \tau-\int_{0}^{t} f^{o}\left(x_{\tau}\right) d \tau= & \int_{0}^{t}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right)-f^{o}\left(x_{\tau}\right)\right) d \tau \\
= & \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right)-f^{o}\left(x_{\tau}\right)\right) d \tau \\
& \quad+\int_{t_{N}}^{t}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right)-f^{o}\left(x_{\tau}\right)\right) d \tau  \tag{3.8}\\
\simeq & \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right)-f^{o}\left(x_{\tau}\right)\right) d \tau
\end{align*}
$$

since

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left\|\int_{t_{N}}^{t}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right)-f^{o}\left(x_{\tau}\right)\right) d \tau\right\| \leq \int_{t_{N}}^{t}\left(\left\|f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right)\right\|+\left\|f^{o}\left(x_{\tau}\right)\right\|\right) d \tau \\
\leq 2 M\left(t-t_{N}\right) \leq 2 M\left(t_{N+1}-t_{N}\right) \leq 2 M \alpha \simeq 0
\end{gathered}
$$

where $\alpha=\max \left\{\alpha_{n}\right\} \simeq 0$ (see Appendix A, Lemma A.4.2) and $M$ is a standard bound for $f$ (condition ( $\mathrm{H} 1^{\prime}$ )) and then for $f^{o}$ too.

By Lemma 3.4.3 we have $x_{\tau} \simeq x_{t_{n}}$ for $\tau \in\left[t_{n}, t_{n+1}\right]$ and $x_{t_{n}}$ is nearstandard, so that by the condition (H2') and Lemma 3.4.1 (the continuity of $f^{o}$ ) it follows respectively that

$$
f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right)=f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{t_{n}}\right)+\gamma_{n}(\tau)
$$

and

$$
f^{o}\left(x_{\tau}\right)=f^{o}\left(x_{t_{n}}\right)+\delta_{n}(\tau)
$$

with $\gamma_{n}(\tau) \simeq 0 \simeq \delta_{n}(\tau)$. Hence, from (3.8) it follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right) d \tau-\int_{0}^{t} f^{o}\left(x_{\tau}\right) d \tau \simeq & \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{t_{n}}\right)-f^{o}\left(x_{t_{n}}\right)+\eta_{n}(\tau)\right) d \tau \\
= & \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{t_{n}}\right)-f^{o}\left(x_{t_{n}}\right)\right) d \tau \\
& +\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}} \eta_{n}(\tau) d \tau
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\eta_{n}(\tau)=\gamma_{n}(\tau)+\delta_{n}(\tau)$, and therefore

$$
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right) d \tau-\int_{0}^{t} f^{o}\left(x_{\tau}\right) d \tau \simeq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{t_{n}}\right)-f^{o}\left(x_{t_{n}}\right)\right) d \tau
$$

since

$$
\left|\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}} \eta_{n}(\tau) d \tau\right| \leq \bar{\eta} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}} d \tau=\bar{\eta} \cdot t_{N}
$$

where $\bar{\eta}=\sup \left\{\eta_{n}: 0 \leq n \leq N-1\right\}$ and $\eta_{n}=\sup \left\{\left\|\eta_{n}(\tau)\right\|: t_{n} \leq \tau \leq t_{n+1}\right\}$. By Lemma A.4.2 (Appendix A), $\bar{\eta}$ is infinitesimal and so is $\bar{\eta} \cdot t_{N}$.

Let $0 \leq n \leq N-1$. By means of (3.7) we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{t_{n}}\right)-f^{o}\left(x_{t_{n}}\right)\right) d \tau & =\int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n}+\alpha_{n}}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{t_{n}}\right)-f^{o}\left(x_{t_{n}}\right)\right) d \tau \\
& =\int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n}+\alpha_{n}} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{t_{n}}\right) d \tau-\alpha_{n} \cdot f^{o}\left(x_{t_{n}}\right) \\
& =\varepsilon \int_{t_{n} / \varepsilon}^{t_{n} / \varepsilon+\alpha_{n} / \varepsilon} f\left(\tau, x_{t_{n}}\right) d \tau-\alpha_{n} \cdot f^{o}\left(x_{t_{n}}\right) \\
& =\alpha_{n}\left(\frac{\varepsilon}{\alpha_{n}} \int_{t_{n} / \varepsilon}^{t_{n} / \varepsilon+\alpha_{n} / \varepsilon} f\left(\tau, x_{t_{n}}\right) d \tau-f^{o}\left(x_{t_{n}}\right)\right) \\
& =\alpha_{n} \cdot \beta_{n} \quad \text { with } \beta_{n} \simeq 0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore

$$
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right) d \tau-\int_{0}^{t} f^{o}\left(x_{\tau}\right) d \tau \simeq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \alpha_{n} . \beta_{n} \simeq 0
$$

since $\left|\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \alpha_{n} . \beta_{n}\right| \leq \bar{\beta} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \alpha_{n}=\bar{\beta} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\left(t_{n+1}-t_{n}\right)=\bar{\beta} . t_{N}$, where $\bar{\beta}=\max \left\{\left\|\beta_{n}\right\|: 0 \leq\right.$ $n \leq N-1\}$. By Lemma A.4.2 (Appendix A), $\bar{\beta}$ is infinitesimal and so is $\bar{\beta} \cdot t_{N}$. This completes the proof of Lemma 3.4.4.

Lemma 3.4.5 Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ be standard. Let $x$ be a solution of (3.5) with initial value $\phi$ at 0 , let $I=[-r, b)$ be its maximal interval of definition, and let $L_{1}>0$ be standard such that $\left[0, L_{1}\right] \subset I$. Then the shadow of $x$ on $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$ coincides with the solution $y=y(. ; 0, \phi)$ of (3.6) on this interval so that $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for all $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$.

Proof. First, by Lemma 3.4.3, $x$ is S-continuous and nearstandard on $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$.
Next, by means of Lemma 3.4.4, for $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$, we have

$$
x(t)=\phi(0)+\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right) d \tau \simeq \phi(0)+\int_{0}^{t} f^{o}\left(x_{\tau}\right) d \tau
$$

If ${ }^{o} x$ is the shadow of $x$ on $\left[0, L_{1}\right]$, it is not difficult to verify that the function $z$ defined as

$$
z(t)= \begin{cases}{ }^{o} x(t), & \text { for } t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right] \\ \phi(t), & \text { for } t \in[-r, 0]\end{cases}
$$

is a solution of (3.6). By hypothesis (H4) we have $z \equiv y$ on $\left[-r, L_{1}\right]$ so that $x(t) \simeq{ }^{o} x(t)=z(t)=y(t)$ for $t \in\left[0, L_{1}\right]$.

Second Part: In this part, we are giving in Lemma 3.4.6 below, the external formulation of an equilibrium exponential stability definition. This result is needed for the proof of Theorem 3.3.2.

Lemma 3.4.6 The equilibrium $y_{e}$ of (3.6) is exponentially stable if and only if it admits a standard domain of exponential stability, that is, there exist standard $b, K$ and $\lambda>0$ such that, for all standard $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ and all standard $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$, the solution $y=y\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ of (3.6) for which $\left|\phi-y_{e}\right|<b$, is defined on $\left[t_{0}, \infty\right)$ and the inequality $\left\|y(t)-y_{e}\right\| \leq K e^{-\lambda\left(t-t_{0}\right)}\left|\phi-y_{e}\right|$ holds for all $t \geq t_{0}$.

Proof. The conclusion of the lemma is obtained by successive use of transfer principle (Appendix A, subsection A.2.2).

### 3.4.2 Proof of Theorem 3.3.1

For notation simplicity, let $t_{0}=0$. Let $L>0$ be standard in $J$. Let $K$ be a standard tubular neighborhood of diameter $\rho$ around $\Gamma=y([0, L])$. Let $I$ be the maximal interval of definition of $x$. Define the set $A=\left\{L_{1} \in I \cap[0, L] / x\left(\left[0, L_{1}\right]\right) \subset K\right\}$. $A$ is non empty $(0 \in A)$ and bounded above by $L$. Let $L_{0}$ be a lower upper bound of $A$. There is $L_{1} \in A$ such that $L_{0}-\varepsilon^{2}<L_{1} \leq L_{0}$. By continuation, there is $L_{2}, L_{2}$ appreciable, such that $x$ remains defined on $\left[0, L_{1}+\varepsilon L_{2}\right]$. Likewise, by continuation, $y$ remains defined in particular on the same interval. By Lemma 3.4.5, we have $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for $t \in\left[0, L_{1}+\varepsilon L_{2}\right]$. Suppose $L_{1}+\varepsilon L_{2} \leq L$. Then, $\left[0, L_{1}+\varepsilon L_{2}\right] \subset I$ and $x\left(\left[0, L_{1}+\varepsilon L_{2}\right]\right) \subset K$, implie that $L_{1}+\varepsilon L_{2} \in A$, which is a contradiction. Thus $L_{1}+\varepsilon L_{2}>L$, that is, we have $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for all $t \in[0, L] \subset\left[0, L_{1}+\varepsilon L_{2}\right]$.

### 3.4.3 Proof of Theorem 3.3.2

Let $t_{0}=0$. On $[-r, 0]$ we have $x(t)=y(t)=\phi(t)$ and therefore the conclusion of the theorem holds. By Theorem 3.3.1, the approximation $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ is satisfied for all $t \in[0, L], L>t_{0}$, $L$ standard. Let $t_{1}>t_{0}, t_{1}$ standard. $t_{1}$ will be chosen convenably later.

Now, for $n=0,1,2, \ldots$, let $I_{n}=\left[n t_{1},(n+1) t_{1}\right]$. The collection $\left\{I_{n}\right\}_{n \geq 0}$ is a partition of the positive time axis so that $\mathbb{R}_{+}=[0, \infty)=\bigcup_{n \geq 0} I_{n}$. On each interval $I_{n}, n \geq 1$, we define $y_{n}$ as the solution of (3.6) with initial function $y_{n}(t)=x(t)$ for $t \in\left[n t_{1}-r, n t_{1}\right]$. By Theorem 3.3.1, the approximation $x(t) \simeq y_{n}(t)$ holds for all $t \in I_{n}$. From the definition of exponential stability and its properties we have, for
$t \geq n t_{1}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|y(t)-y_{n}(t)\right\| \leq K e^{-\lambda\left(t-n t_{1}\right)} \sup _{s \in\left[n t_{1}-r, n t_{1}\right]}\left\|y(s)-y_{n}(s)\right\| \tag{3.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $K$ and $\lambda$ are positive and standard.
Using the triangle inequality, we have, for $s \in\left[n t_{1}-r, n t_{1}\right]$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|y(s)-y_{n}(s)\right\| \leq\left\|y(s)-y_{n-1}(s)\right\|+\left\|y_{n}(s)-y_{n-1}(s)\right\| . \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

However, by Theorem 3.3.1, we have $y_{n}(s)=x(s) \simeq y_{n-1}(s)$ for all $s \in\left[n t_{1}-r, n t_{1}\right]$ and then, by Lemma A.4.2,

$$
\max _{n \geq 0} \sup _{s \in\left[n t_{1}-r, n t_{1}\right]}\left\|y_{n}(s)-y_{n-1}(s)\right\| \leq \alpha \simeq 0
$$

Take $t_{1} \geq r$. From (3.9) and (3.10) it follows that, for $t \geq n t_{1}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|y(t)-y_{n}(t)\right\| \leq K e^{-\lambda\left(t-n t_{1}\right)}\left(\sup _{s \in\left[n t_{1}-r, n t_{1}\right]}\left\|y(s)-y_{n-1}(s)\right\|+\alpha\right) \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sup _{s \in\left[(n+1) t_{1}-r,(n+1) t_{1}\right]}\left\|y(s)-y_{n}(s)\right\| \leq & K \sup _{s \in\left[(n+1) t_{1}-r,(n+1) t_{1}\right]} e^{-\lambda\left(s-n t_{1}\right)} \times \\
& \times\left(\sup _{s \in\left[n t_{1}-r, n t_{1}\right]}\left\|y(s)-y_{n-1}(s)\right\|+\alpha\right) \\
= & K e^{-\lambda\left(t_{1}-r\right)}\left(\sup _{s \in\left[n t_{1}-r, n t_{1}\right]}\left\|y(s)-y_{n-1}(s)\right\|+\alpha\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

or equivalently

$$
\left|y-y_{n}\right|_{n} \leq K e^{-\lambda\left(t_{1}-r\right)}\left(\left|y-y_{n-1}\right|_{n-1}+\alpha\right), \quad n=1,2, \ldots
$$

where

$$
\left|y-y_{n}\right|_{n}:=\sup _{s \in\left[(n+1) t_{1}-r,(n+1) t_{1}\right]}\left\|y(s)-y_{n}(s)\right\| .
$$

Suppose $K>1$ and choose $t_{1}$ such that $K e^{-\lambda\left(t_{1}-r\right)}<1$. Since $\left|y-y_{0}\right|_{0}=0$ we deduce that

$$
\left|y-y_{n}\right|_{n} \leq \frac{K e^{-\lambda\left(t_{1}-r\right)}}{1-K e^{-\lambda\left(t_{1}-r\right)}} \alpha
$$

Return now to inequality (3.11). For $t \in I_{n}, n \geq 0$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|y(t)-y_{n}(t)\right\| & \leq K e^{-\lambda\left(t-n t_{1}\right)}\left(\frac{K e^{-\lambda\left(t_{1}-r\right)}}{1-K e^{-\lambda\left(t_{1}-r\right)}}+1\right) \alpha \\
& \leq \frac{K \alpha}{1-K e^{-\lambda\left(t_{1}-r\right)}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

That is, $y(t) \simeq y_{n}(t)$ on $I_{n}$.
Thus, for $t \in I_{n}$

$$
x(t) \simeq y_{n}(t) \quad \text { and } \quad y(t) \simeq y_{n}(t) \quad \Longrightarrow \quad x(t) \simeq y(t)
$$

As $n$ is chosen arbitrarily, this completes the proof.

### 3.5 Bibliography

[1] N. N. Bogoliubov and Y. A. Mitropolsky, "Asymptotic Methods in the Theory of Nonlinear Oscillations',' Internat. Monog. Adv. Math. Physics, Gordon and Breach, New York, 1961.
[2] J. Guckenheimer and P. Holmes, "Nonlinear Oscillations, Dynamical Systems and Bifurcations of Vector Fields", Appl. Math. Sciences 42, SpringerVerlag, Berlin, 1983.
[3] A. Halanay, The method of averaging in equations with retardation, Rev. Math. Pur. Appl. Acad. R.P.R. 4 (1959), 467-483.
[4] A. Halanay, On the method of averaging for differential equations with retarded argument, J. Math. Anal. Appl. 14 (1966), 70-76.
[5] J.K. Hale, Averaging methods for differential equations with retarded arguments, J. Diff. Equa. 2 (1966), 57-73.
[6] J.K. Hale, "Ordinary Differential Equations", Texts Monogr. Pure Appl. Math. Krieger, Melbourne, FL, 1969.
[7] J.K. Hale and S.M. Verduyn Lunel, Averaging in infinite dimensions, J. Integral Equa. \& Appl. 2, no 4 (1990), 463-494.
[8] M. Lakrib, On the validity of the averaging method for all time, Maghreb Math. Rev., vol. 8, no 1\&2 (1999).
[9] M. Lakrib, The method of averaging and functional differential equations with delay, Inter. J. Math. \& Math. Sci. vol. 26, Issue 8 (2001), 497-511.
[10] M. Lakrib and T. Sari, Averaging method for functional differential equations, submitted for publication.
[11] P. Lochak and C. Meunier, "Multiphase Averaging for Classical Systems", Appl. Math. Sciences 72, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1988.
[12] G.N. Medvedev, Asymptotic solutions of some systems of differential equations with deviating argument, Soviet Math. Dokl. 9 (1968), 85-87.
[13] J.A. Sanders and F. Verhulst, "Averaging Methods in Nonlinear Dynamical Systems", Appl. Math. Sciences 59, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1985.
[14] T. Sari, Stroboscopy and averaging, in Colloque Trajectorien à la mémoire de G. Reeb et J.L. Callot, Strasbourg-Obernai, 12-16 juin 1995. A. Fruchard et A. Troesch, Editeurs. Publication de l'IRMA, 13 (1995), 95-124.
[15] V.M. Volosov, G.M. Medvedev and B.I. Morgunov, On the applications of the averaging method for certain systems of differential equations with delay, Vestnik M.G.U. Ser. III, Fizika, Astronomija (1968), 251-294.
[16] M. Yebdri, "Equations Différentielles à Retard", Thèse de Magister, Université de Tlemcen, 1989.

## Chapter 4

## Time averaging for functional differential equations

This chapter essentially contains the paper [15] " Time averaging for functional differential equations", (Submitted for publication).

Comparatively to the result on the method of averaging for functional differential equations given in [Chap.3, Theorem 3.2.1, page 33], here we give an alternate result under different conditions.

### 4.1 Introduction

The method of averaging is an important tool in the analysis of nonautonomous ordinary differential equations, containing high frequency time oscillations (cf. [2, 3, $6,11,13,17,18]$ ). The method was extended to many other problems, like ordinary differential equations in Banach spaces (cf. [7]), functional differential equations (cf. $[4,5,8,9,12,14,16]$ ), parabolic partial differential equations (cf. [1, 10, 19]), and so forth.

In the present chapter, we will give a basic theorem concerning the method of averaging for functional differential equations of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}(t)=f\left(\frac{t}{\varepsilon}, x_{t}\right) . \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Section 4.2 contains the conditions required to state and prove our main result as well as the main result itself (Theorem 4.2.1) and its nonstandard translate (Theorem 4.2.2) in the language of Internal Set Theory (see Appendix A). The proof of this result is given in Subsection 4.3.2. To simplify the proof, several subsidary lemmas have been placed in Subsection 4.3.1.

### 4.2 Conditions and Main Result

The following conditions will be assumed to be true:
(H1) The functional $f$ is continuous on $\mathbb{R}_{+} \times \mathcal{C}_{o}$.
(H2) The functional $f$ is Lipschitz, that is, there exists some constant $k$ such that

$$
\left\|f\left(\tau, u_{1}\right)-f\left(\tau, u_{2}\right)\right\| \leq k\left|u_{1}-u_{2}\right|, \quad \text { for all } \tau \geq 0 \text { and } u_{1}, u_{2} \in \mathcal{C}_{o} .
$$

(H3) For all $u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ there exists a limit

$$
f^{o}(u):=\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, u) d \tau
$$

Consider the averaged equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{y}(t)=f^{o}\left(y_{t}\right) . \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Under the above assumptions, we will state the main result of this chapter which gives nearness of the solutions $x$ and $y$ of (4.1) and (4.2), respectively, with the same initial conditions.

Theorem 4.2.1 Let the assumptions (H1), (H2) and (H3) hold true. Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{0}$ and $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$. Let $x=x\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ be the solution of (4.1), let $y=y\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ be the solution of (4.2), and let $J$ be the maximal interval of definition of $y$. Then for any $T>t_{0}, T \in J$, and any $\delta>0$ there exists $\varepsilon_{0}=\varepsilon_{0}(T, \delta)>0$ such that, for $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right]$, $x$ is defined at least on $\left[t_{0}, T\right]$ and satisfies $\|x(t)-y(t)\|<\delta$ on $t \in\left[t_{0}, T\right]$.

Remark 1 The existence and uniqueness of the solutions of (4.2) will be justified in Lemma 4.3.1 below. Endeed, there we will show that $f^{\circ}$ is $k$-Lipschitz so that existence and uniqueness are guaranteed.

The nonstandard formulation of Theorem 4.2.1 is as follows:
Theorem 4.2.2 Let $f: \mathbb{R} \times \mathcal{C}_{o} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be standard. Assume that all assumptions in Theorem 4.2.1 hold true. Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ and $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ be standard. Let $x=x\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ be the solution of (4.1), let $y=y\left(. ; t_{0}, \phi\right)$ be the solution of (4.2), and let $J$ be the maximal interval of definition of $y$. Let $\varepsilon>0$ be infinitesimal. Then for any standard $T>t_{0}, T \in J, x$ is defined at least on $\left[t_{0}, T\right]$ and satisfies $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for all $t \in\left[t_{0}, T\right]$.

The proof of Theorem 4.2.2 is postponed to next section. The reduction of Theorem 4.2.2 to Theorem 4.2.1 is the same one as in [Chap.2, subsection 2.3.1] and in [Chap.3, section 3.3].

### 4.3 Proof of Theorem 4.2.2

### 4.3.1 Preliminary Lemmas

In this subsection we give some results we need for the proof of Theorem 4.2.2. We assume that all assumptions in Theorem 4.2.2 hold true. Let us give external formulations of conditions (H1), (H2) and (H3) respectively:
$\left(H 1^{\prime}\right) \quad \forall^{s t} \tau \geq 0 \quad \forall^{s t} u \in \mathcal{C}_{o} \quad \forall \tau^{\prime} \geq 0 \quad \forall u^{\prime} \in \mathcal{C}_{o}:$

$$
\tau^{\prime} \simeq \tau \text { and } u^{\prime} \simeq u \Longrightarrow f\left(\tau, u^{\prime}\right) \simeq f(\tau, u)
$$

(H2') There is a standard constant $k$ such that

$$
\left\|f\left(\tau, u_{1}\right)-f\left(\tau, u_{2}\right)\right\| \leq k\left|u_{1}-u_{2}\right|, \quad \forall^{s t} \tau \geq 0 \forall^{s t} u_{1}, u_{2} \in \mathcal{C}_{o}
$$

(and by transfer (Appendix A, subsection A.2.2) the inequality holds for all $\tau \geq 0$ and $\left.u_{1}, u_{2} \in \mathcal{C}_{o}\right)$.
(H3') There is a standard functional $f^{o}: \mathcal{C}_{o} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ such that

$$
\forall^{s t} u \in \mathcal{C}_{o} \quad \forall T \simeq+\infty: \quad f^{o}(u) \simeq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, u) d \tau
$$

Lemma 4.3.1 The functional $f^{o}$ is Lipschitz (with the same constant of Lipschitz as f), and satisfies

$$
f^{o}(u) \simeq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, u) d \tau
$$

for all $u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}, u$ nearstandard, and all $T \simeq+\infty$.
Proof. First, let $u_{1}$ and $u_{2} \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$, with $u_{1}$ and $u_{2}$ standard. By means of conditions (H2) and (H3), we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|f^{o}\left(u_{1}\right)-f^{o}\left(u_{2}\right)\right\| \leq \lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T}\left\|f\left(\tau, u_{1}\right)-f\left(\tau, u_{2}\right) d \tau\right\| \leq k\left|u_{1}-u_{2}\right| \tag{4.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

That is, $f^{o}$ is $k$-Lipschitz.
Next, let $u,{ }^{o} u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ such that ${ }^{o} u$ is standard and $u \simeq{ }^{o} u$. By means of (4.3), conditions (H3') and (H2'), respectively, for all $T \simeq+\infty$, we have

$$
f^{o}(u) \simeq f^{o}\left({ }^{o} u\right) \simeq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f\left(\tau,{ }^{o} u\right) d \tau \simeq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} f(\tau, u) d \tau
$$

Lemma 4.3.2 There exists $\mu>0$ such that whenever $t \geq 0$ is limited and $u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ is nearstandard there exists $\alpha>0$ such that $\mu<\alpha \simeq 0$ and

$$
\frac{\varepsilon}{\alpha} \int_{t / \varepsilon}^{t / \varepsilon+\alpha / \varepsilon} f(\tau, u) d \tau \simeq f^{o}(u)
$$

Proof. The proof of Lemma 4.3.2 is the same one as in [Chap.2, Lemma 2.4.2, page 20].

Lemma 4.3.3 Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ be standard. Let $y=y(. ; 0, \phi)$ be the solution of (4.2) on $J$, and let $T_{1}>0$ be standard such that $\left[0, T_{1}\right] \subset J$. Then there exist some positive integer $N_{o}$ and some infinitesimal partition $\left\{t_{n}: n=0, \ldots, N_{o}+1\right\}$ of $\left[0, T_{1}\right]$ such that $t_{0}=0, t_{N_{o}} \leq T_{1}<t_{N_{o}+1}, t_{n+1}=t_{n}+\alpha_{n} \simeq t_{n}$ and

$$
\frac{\varepsilon}{\alpha_{n}} \int_{t_{n} / \varepsilon}^{t_{n} / \varepsilon+\alpha_{n} / \varepsilon} f\left(\tau, y_{t_{n}}\right) d \tau \simeq f^{o}\left(y_{t_{n}}\right) .
$$

Proof. First, notice that $y\left(\left[-r, T_{1}\right]\right)$ is a standard compact subset of $\mathbb{R}^{n}$.
Next, define the set $A=\left\{\lambda \in \mathbb{R} / \forall t \in\left[0, T_{1}\right] \exists \alpha \in \mathbb{R}: \mathcal{P}(t, \alpha, \lambda)\right\}$ where

$$
\mathcal{P}(t, \alpha, \lambda) \equiv \mu<\alpha<\lambda \quad \text { and } \quad\left\|\frac{\varepsilon}{\alpha} \int_{t / \varepsilon}^{t / \varepsilon+\alpha / \varepsilon} f\left(\tau, y_{t}\right) d \tau-f^{o}\left(y_{t}\right)\right\|<\lambda
$$

By Lemma 4.3.2 the set $A$ contains all the standard real numbers $\lambda>0$. By Lemma A.4.4 (Appendix A) there exists $\lambda_{0} \simeq 0$ in $A$, that is, there exists $0<\lambda_{0} \simeq 0$ such that for all $t \in\left[0, T_{1}\right]$ there exists $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $\mathcal{P}\left(t, \alpha, \lambda_{0}\right)$ holds. By the axiom of choise there exists a function $c:\left[0, T_{1}\right] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that $c(t)=\alpha$, that is, $\mathcal{P}\left(t, c(t), \lambda_{0}\right)$ holds for all $t \in\left[0, T_{1}\right]$. Since $c(t)>\mu$ for all $t \in\left[0, T_{1}\right]$, the conclusion of the lemma is immediate.

Lemma 4.3.4 Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ be standard. Let $y=y(. ; 0, \phi)$ be the solution of (4.2) on $J$, and let $T_{1}>0$ be standard such that $\left[0, T_{1}\right] \subset J$. Then for all $t \in\left[0, T_{1}\right]$

$$
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right) d \tau \simeq \int_{0}^{t} f^{o}\left(y_{\tau}\right) d \tau
$$

Proof. Let $f_{1}(\tau, u):=f(\tau, u)-f^{o}(u)$, for $\tau \geq 0$ and $u \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$. The functional $f_{1}$ is Lipschitz, that is, there exists some standard constant $k_{1}\left(k_{1}=2 k\right.$, where $k$ is the Lipschitz constant of $f$ ) such that

$$
\left\|f_{1}\left(\tau, u_{1}\right)-f_{1}\left(\tau, u_{2}\right)\right\| \leq k_{1}\left|u_{1}-u_{2}\right|, \quad \text { for all } \tau \geq 0 \text { and } u_{1}, u_{2} \in \mathcal{C}_{o} .
$$

Next, by Lemma 4.3.3 there exists $\left\{t_{n}: n=0, \ldots, N_{o}+1\right\}$ such that $t_{0}=0, t_{N_{o}} \leq$ $T_{1}<t_{N_{o}+1}, t_{n+1}=t_{n}+\alpha_{n} \simeq t_{n}$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\varepsilon}{\alpha_{n}} \int_{t_{n} / \varepsilon}^{t_{n} / \varepsilon+\alpha_{n} / \varepsilon} f_{1}\left(\tau, y_{t_{n}}\right) d \tau \simeq 0 \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $t \in\left[0, T_{1}\right]$, and let $N$ be a positive integer such that $t_{N} \leq t<t_{N+1}$. We have

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left\|\int_{t_{N}}^{t} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right) d \tau\right\| \\
\leq\left\|\int_{t_{N}}^{t} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right) d \tau-\int_{t_{N}}^{t} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, 0\right) d \tau\right\|+\left\|\int_{t_{N}}^{t} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, 0\right) d \tau\right\| \\
\leq \int_{t_{N}}^{t}\left\|f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right)-f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, 0\right)\right\| d \tau+\left\|\int_{t_{N}}^{t} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, 0\right) d \tau\right\|  \tag{4.5}\\
\leq k_{1} \int_{t_{N}}^{t}\left|y_{\tau}\right| d \tau+\left\|\int_{t_{N}}^{t} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, 0\right) d \tau\right\|
\end{gather*}
$$

As $y\left(\left[-r, T_{1}\right]\right)$ is a standard compact subset of $\mathbb{R}^{n}$, it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{t_{N}}^{t}\left|y_{\tau}\right| d \tau \simeq 0 \tag{4.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us now estimate the second term in the right hand side of (4.5). For this, consider all the cases.
i) Both $t_{N} / \varepsilon$ and $t / \varepsilon$ are limited. In this case, it is clear that

$$
\left\|\int_{t_{N}}^{t} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, 0\right) d \tau\right\|=\varepsilon\left\|\int_{t_{N} / \varepsilon}^{t / \varepsilon} f_{1}(s, 0) d s\right\| \simeq 0
$$

ii) Both $t_{N} / \varepsilon$ and $t / \varepsilon$ are unlimited. By means of condition (H3'), we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\int_{t_{N}}^{t} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, 0\right) d \tau\right\| & =\varepsilon\left\|\int_{t_{N} / \varepsilon}^{t / \varepsilon} f_{1}(s, 0) d s\right\| \\
& \leq t_{N}\left\|\frac{1}{t_{N} / \varepsilon} \int_{0}^{t_{N} / \varepsilon} f_{1}(s, 0) d s\right\|+t\left\|\frac{1}{t / \varepsilon} \int_{0}^{t / \varepsilon} f_{1}(s, 0) d s\right\| \simeq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

iii) $t_{N} / \varepsilon$ is limited and $t / \varepsilon$ is unlimited. This case is a combination of cases i) and ii). We write

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\int_{t_{N}}^{t} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, 0\right) d \tau\right\| & =\varepsilon\left\|\int_{t_{N} / \varepsilon}^{t / \varepsilon} f_{1}(s, 0) d s\right\| \\
& \leq \varepsilon\left\|\int_{0}^{t_{N} / \varepsilon} f_{1}(s, 0) d s\right\|+t\left\|\frac{1}{t / \varepsilon} \int_{0}^{t / \varepsilon} f_{1}(s, 0) d s\right\| \simeq 0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\int_{t_{N}}^{t} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, 0\right) d \tau\right\| \simeq 0 \tag{4.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, from (4.5) and by means of (4.6) and (4.7), we obtain that

$$
\left\|\int_{t_{N}}^{t} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right) d \tau\right\| \simeq 0
$$

so that

$$
\begin{align*}
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right) d \tau- & \int_{0}^{t} f^{o}\left(y_{\tau}\right) d \tau \\
& =\int_{0}^{t} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right) d \tau \\
\simeq & \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right) d \tau  \tag{4.8}\\
= & \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left(f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right)-f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{t_{n}}\right)\right) d \tau \\
& +\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{t_{n}}\right) d \tau .
\end{align*}
$$

As $f^{o}$ is bounded on $y\left(\left[-r, T_{1}\right]\right)$ by some standard positive constant, it is not difficult to verify that $y_{\tau} \simeq y_{t_{n}}$ for $\tau \in\left[t_{n}, t_{n+1}\right], n=0, \ldots, N$, and then by Lemma A.4.2 (Appendix A), we have

$$
\sup _{0 \leq n \leq N-1} \sup _{\tau \in\left[t_{n}, t_{n+1}\right]}\left\{\left|y_{\tau}-y_{t_{n}}\right|\right\} \simeq 0
$$

and so is

$$
k_{1} \cdot \sup _{0 \leq n \leq N-1} \sup _{\tau \in\left[t_{n}, t_{n+1}\right]}\left\{\left|y_{\tau}-y_{t_{n}}\right|\right\} \cdot t_{N}
$$

so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\left\|\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right)-f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{t_{n}}\right) d \tau\right\| \\
& \leq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left\|f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right)-f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{t_{n}}\right)\right\| d \tau \\
& \leq k_{1} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}}\left|y_{\tau}-y_{t_{n}}\right| d \tau \\
& \leq k_{1} \cdot \sup _{0 \leq n \leq N-1} \sup _{\tau \in\left[t_{n}, t_{n+1}\right]}\left\{\left|y_{\tau}-y_{t_{n}}\right|\right\} \cdot t_{N} \simeq 0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, from (4.8) and by means of (4.4), it follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right) d \tau-\int_{0}^{t} f^{o}\left(y_{\tau}\right) d \tau & \simeq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n+1}} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{t_{n}}\right) d \tau \\
& =\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n}}^{t_{n}+\alpha_{n}} f_{1}\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{t_{n}}\right) d \tau \\
& =\varepsilon \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_{n} / \varepsilon}^{t_{n} / \varepsilon+\alpha_{n} / \varepsilon} f_{1}\left(\tau, y_{t_{n}}\right) d \tau \\
& =\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \alpha_{n}\left(\frac{\varepsilon}{\alpha_{n}} \int_{t_{n} / \varepsilon}^{t_{n} / \varepsilon+\alpha_{n} / \varepsilon} f_{1}\left(\tau, y_{t_{n}}\right) d \tau\right) \\
& =\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \alpha_{n} \beta_{n} \simeq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

since $\left\|\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \alpha_{n} . \beta_{n}\right\| \leq \bar{\beta} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \alpha_{n}=\bar{\beta} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\left(t_{n+1}-t_{n}\right)=\bar{\beta} . t_{N}$, where $\bar{\beta}=\max \left\{\left\|\beta_{n}\right\|\right.$ : $0 \leq n \leq N-1\}$. By Lemma A.4.2 (Appendix A), $\bar{\beta}$ is infinitesimal and so is $\bar{\beta} . t_{N}$. This completes the proof of Lemma 4.3.4.

Lemma 4.3.5 Let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}_{o}$ be standard. Let $x=x(. ; 0, \phi)$ be the solution of (4.1) on $I$, and $y=y(. ; 0, \phi)$ be the solution of (4.2) on J. Let $T_{1}>0$ be standard such that $\left[0, T_{1}\right] \subset I \cap J$. Then $x(t) \simeq y(t)$ for all $t \in\left[0, T_{1}\right]$.

Proof. For $t \in\left[0, T_{1}\right]$ we have

$$
\begin{gather*}
x(t)=\phi(0)+\int_{0}^{t} f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right) d \tau  \tag{4.9}\\
y(t)=\phi(0)+\int_{0}^{t} f^{o}\left(y_{\tau}\right) d \tau \tag{4.10}
\end{gather*}
$$

Substraction of (4.9) and (4.10) gives

$$
\begin{align*}
\| x(t) & -y(t) \| \\
& \leq\left\|\int_{0}^{t}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right)-f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right)\right) d \tau\right\|+\left\|\int_{0}^{t}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right)-f^{o}\left(y_{\tau}\right)\right) d \tau\right\| \\
& \leq \int_{0}^{t}\left\|f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, x_{\tau}\right)-f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right)\right\| d \tau+\left\|\int_{0}^{t}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right)-f^{o}\left(y_{\tau}\right)\right) d \tau\right\|  \tag{4.11}\\
& \leq k \int_{0}^{t}\left|x_{\tau}-y_{\tau}\right| d \tau+\left\|\int_{0}^{t}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right)-f^{o}\left(y_{\tau}\right)\right) d \tau\right\| .
\end{align*}
$$

Since, for $\tau \in[0, t],\left|x_{\tau}-y_{\tau}\right| \leq \sup _{s \in[0, \tau]}\|x(s)-y(s)\|$, it follows from (4.11) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|x(t)-y(t)\| \leq k \int_{0}^{t} \sup _{s \in[0, \tau]}\|x(s)-y(s)\| d \tau+\left\|\int_{0}^{t}\left(f\left(\frac{\tau}{\varepsilon}, y_{\tau}\right)-f^{o}\left(y_{\tau}\right)\right) d \tau\right\| \tag{4.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

The first term of the right hand side of (4.12) is increasing, and therefore

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sup _{\tau \in[0, t]}\|x(\tau)-y(\tau)\| \\
\leq k \int_{0}^{t} \sup _{s \in[0, \tau]}\|x(s)-y(s)\| d \tau+\sup _{\tau \in[0, t]}\left\|\int_{0}^{\tau}\left(f\left(\frac{s}{\varepsilon}, y_{s}\right)-f^{o}\left(y_{s}\right)\right) d s\right\| .
\end{gathered}
$$

By Gronwall's Lemma, this implies that

$$
\sup _{\tau \in[0, t]}\|x(\tau)-y(\tau)\| \leq e^{k t} \sup _{\tau \in[0, t]}\left\|\int_{0}^{\tau}\left(f\left(\frac{s}{\varepsilon}, y_{s}\right)-f^{o}\left(y_{s}\right)\right) d s\right\|
$$

and by means of Lemma 4.3.4 and Lemma A.4.2 (Appendix A), respectively, we conclude that $x(t) \simeq y(t)$, which finishes the proof.

### 4.3.2 Proof of Theorem 4.2.2

The proof of Theorem 4.2.2 is the same one as in [Chap.3, section 3.4.2, page 39].

### 4.4 Bibliography

[1] A. Bensoussan, J.L. Lions and G. Papanicolaou, "Asymptotic Analysis for Periodic Structure", North Holand, Amsterdam, 1978, 516-533.
[2] N. N. Bogoliubov and Y. A. Mitropolsky, "Asymptotic Methods in the Theory of Nonlinear Oscillations", Internat. Monog. Adv. Math. Physics, Gordon and Breach, New York, 1961.
[3] J. Guckenheimer and P. Holmes, "Nonlinear Oscillations, Dynamical Systems and Bifurcations of Vector Fields", Appl. Math. Sciences 42, SpringerVerlag, Berlin, 1983.
[4] A. Halanay, On the method of averaging for differential equations with retarded argument, J. Math. Anal. Appl. 14 (1966), 70-76.
[5] J.K. Hale, Averaging methods for differential equations with retarded arguments, J. Diff. Equa. 2 (1966), 57-73.
[6] J.K. Hale, "Ordinary Differential Equations", Texts Monogr. Pure Appl. Math. Krieger, Melbourne, FL, 1969.
[7] J.K. Hale and S.M. Verduyn Lunel, Averaging in infinite dimensions, J. Integral Equa. \& Appl. 2, no. 4 (1990), 463-494.
[8] T. Janiak and E. Luczak-Kumorek, The theorem of middling for functional differential equations of neutral type, Discuss. Math. 11 (1991), 63-73.
[9] T. Janiak and E. Luczak-Kumorek, A theorem on partial middling for functional differential equations of the neutral type, Review of research, Faculty of Science, Univ. Novi Sad, Math. Ser. 11, no. 2 (1986).
[10] R.Z. Khas'minskir, Principle of averaging for parabolic and elliptic differential equations and for markov processes with small diffusion, Theory Probab. Appl. 8 (1963), 1-21.
[11] M. Lakrib, On the validity of the averaging method for all time, Maghreb Math. Rev., vol. 8, no. 1\&2 (1999).
[12] M. Lakrib, The method of averaging and functional differential equations with delay, Inter. J. Math. \& Math. Sci., vol. 26, issue 8 (2001), 497-511.
[13] M. Lakrib, Sur la moyennisation dans les systèmes à plusieurs fréquences, Maghreb Math. Rev. (1999), to appear.
[14] M. Lakrib and T. Sari, Averaging method for functional differential equations, submitted for publication.
[15] M. Lakrib, Time averaging for functional differential equations, submitted for publication.
[16] G.N. Medvedev, Asymptotic solutions of some systems of differential equations with deviating argument, Soviet Math. Dokl. 9 (1968), 85-87.
[17] J.A. Sanders and F. Verhulst, "Averaging Methods in Nonlinear Dynamical Systems", Appl. Math. Sciences 59, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1985.
[18] T. SARI, Stroboscopy and averaging, in Colloque Trajectorien à la mémoire de G. Reeb et J.L. Callot, Strasbourg-Obernai, 12-16 juin 1995. A. Fruchard et A. Troesch, Editeurs. Publication de l'IRMA, 13 (1995), 95-124.
[19] V.V. Zhikov, S.M. Kozlov and O.A. Oleinik, Averaging of parabolic operators, Trans. Mosc. Math. Soc. 45 (1982), 189-241.

## Appendix A

# Internal Set Theory: A Tutorial 

"... there are good reasons to believe that nonstandard analysis, in some version or other, will be the analysis of the future."

Kurt Gödel

Very little is needed to be known of the theoretical details of Nonstandard Analysis which is a modern theory of infinitesimals as introduced by A. Robinson [16] in order to apply it well. The purpose of this appendix is to communicate the common background necessary to the understanding of Chapters 2-4 and Appendix B of this thesis.

## A. 1 Brief history

Early in the 20th century the logician Thoralf Skolem discovered there must exist what he called "strange" models for arithmetic. Later, in the 1960's, Abraham Robinson gave a precise meaning to the world "strange":

> "In the fall of 1960 it ocurred to me that the concepts and methods of contemporary mathematical logic are capable of providing a suitable framework for the development of the Differential Calculus by means of infinitely small and infinitely large numbers. [This framework] was, in part, inspired by the so-called Non-standard models of arithmetic whose existence was first pointed out by T. Skolem [19]"

Robinson built an alternate model to the standard real number system that contained, in addition to the standard reals, infinitesimals and their reciprocals, infinitely large numbers. For years others had experimented with the use of infinitesimals, but no one had ever given them rigorous credibility. Probably the most famous application of infinitesimals ocurred 300 years earlier when Leibnitz used them in his discovery of the differential calculus, and was promptly ridiculed in spite of the obvious correctness of his results. He and others who followed tried, in vain, to justify their use, eventually grounding calculus instead in a more complicated theory of limits. Robinson's discovery showed, at last, Leibnitz's intuition was right. In his
nonstandard model we can not only reason without contradiction, we can infer with impunity regarding the usual (standard) real numbers.

## A. 2 Presentation of Internal Set Theory

Internal Set Theory (IST) is an axiomatic description of Nonstandard Analysis (NSA) proposed by Nelson [13]. It is an extension of classical axiomatic set theory (Zermelo-Frankel set theory with axiom of choise: ZFC). The only nonlogical symbol of ZFC is $\in$. Here ZFC is completed by the use of a new undefined monadic predicate symbol st (read standard), and three axioms to operate on it, Transfer, Idealization and Standardization. A number (and more generally a set) is either standard or not.

## A.2.1 To be internal or external

Recall that any mathematical formula is built of constants, variables, quantifiers and connectives, displayed in some coherent manner. A constant is an object such as 0 , $1,10, e, \pi, \emptyset, \mathbf{N}, \mathbb{R}$, that has been defined once for all and to which some notation has been assigned; this terminology is somewhat misleading as functions like cos, ln, ,$+ \times$ are also logical constants, as are predicates such as $\leq, \in$ and now st. Objects like $f$ or $\varepsilon$ that, formally, are variables, but that one treats like constants, as though they were objects fixed for all, are called parameters.

We call internal, the formulas of IST without any occurrence of the predicate st in them; otherwise, we call them external. Thus internal formulas are the formulas of ZFC.

## A.2.2 The axioms

Here are the rules as to how to manipulate the predicate "standard". There are three of them: transfer, idealization and standardization.

## A.2.2.1 Tranfer

Principle A.2.1 Let $F$ be an internal formula. Then

$$
\forall^{s t} t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{l}\left[\forall^{s t} x F\left(x, t_{1}, \ldots, t_{l}\right) \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \forall x F\left(x, t_{1}, \ldots, t_{l}\right)\right]
$$

or equivalently

$$
\forall^{s t} t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{l}\left[\exists x F\left(x, t_{1}, \ldots, t_{l}\right) \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \exists^{s t} x F\left(x, t_{1}, \ldots, t_{l}\right)\right] .
$$

The axiom of transfer implies that all explicitly defined sets of classical mathematics, such as $\emptyset, 1,2, \pi, e, \cos , \ln , \ldots, N, \mathbb{R}, \ldots,[0,1]^{\mathrm{R}}, \mathcal{C}^{\infty}[0,1], \ldots$ are standard. Indeed, $\exists$ ! $x F(x) \Longrightarrow \exists^{s t} x F(x)$.

An important consequence of this axiom is that any standard function has standard values at standard points.

## A.2.2.2 Idealization

Principle A.2.2 Let $B$ be an internal formula. Then

$$
\left[\forall^{s t} Y, \text { Y finite } \Longrightarrow \exists x \forall y \in Y B(x, y)\right] \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad\left[\exists x \forall^{s t} y B(x, y)\right]
$$

One of this axiom important consequences is: there exists a finite set that contains all standard objects. As a consequence, all infinite sets have nonstandard elements.

Here are some useful examples of the consequences of the axiom of idealization:

- The relation $B(x, y) \equiv(x \in \mathbb{N}) \&(y \in \mathbb{N}) \Longrightarrow(x \geq y)$ leads to the existence of infinitely large integers.
- The relation $B(x, y) \equiv(x \in E) \&(x \neq y)$ leads to the fact that any set $E$ is standard and finite if and only if it has only standard elements. A consequence is that any limited integer (i.e. less than some standard integer) is itself standard.

As useful consequences we have:

1. A real number $x$ is infinitesimal, denoted by $x \simeq 0$, if its absolute value $|x|$ is smaller than any standard strictly positive real number.
2. A real number $x$ is limited if its absolute value $|x|$ is smaller than some standard real number.
3. A real number $x$ is unlimited, denoted by $x \simeq \pm \infty$, if it is not limited.
4. A real number $x$ is appreciable if it is neither unlimited nor infinitesimal.
5. Two real numbers $x$ and $y$ are infinitely close, denoted by $x \simeq y$, if their difference $x-y$ is infinitesimal.

## A.2.2.3 Standardization

Principle A.2.3 Let $F$ be any formula (internal or external) of IST. Then

$$
\forall^{s t} \mathcal{E} \exists^{s t} \mathcal{S}_{F} \forall^{s t} x\left[x \in \mathcal{S}_{F} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad x \in \mathcal{E} \& F(x)\right]
$$

In words: within a standard reference set $\mathcal{E}$, the standard elements of $\mathcal{E}$ satisfying an arbitrary property $F(x)$ define a standard subset $\mathcal{S}_{F}$ of $\mathcal{E}$. As a consequence of the transfer axiom, this set $\mathcal{S}_{F}$ is unique. It is called the standardized of $\{\operatorname{st}(x) \mid F(x)\}$. We write

$$
\mathcal{S}_{F}:={ }^{S}\{x \in \mathcal{E} \mid F(x)\}
$$

An important consequence is that any limited real number $x$ possess a shadow. It is the standard real number denoted by ${ }^{o} x$ such that ${ }^{\circ} x \simeq x$.

## A.2.2.4 Consistency of IST

Recall that the axioms of IST are all axioms of ZFC, restricted to internal formulas (in other words, IST is an extension of ZFC), plus three others which govern the use of the new predicate. Thus all theorems of ZFC remain valid in IST. IST is a conservative extension of ZFC, that is, every internal theorem of IST is a theorem of ZFC.

IST is a relatively consistent extension of ZFC, that is, IST is consistent with ZFC.

## A.2.3 Reduction algorithm

Some of the theorems which are proved in IST are external and can be reformulated so that they become internal. Indeed, there is an algorithm (a well-known reduction algorithm) to reduce any external formula $F\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ of IST without other free variables than $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}$, to an internal formula $F^{\prime}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ with the same free variables, such that $F \equiv F^{\prime}$, that is, $F \Longleftrightarrow F^{\prime}$ for all standard values of the free variables. In other words, any result which may be formalized within IST by a formula $F\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ is equivalent to the classical property $F^{\prime}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$, provided the parameters $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}$ are restricted to standard values.

We give the reduction of the frequently occurring formula $\forall x\left(\forall^{s t} y A \Longrightarrow \forall^{s t} z B\right)$ where $A$ and $B$ are internal formulas

$$
\begin{equation*}
\forall x\left(\forall^{s t} y A \Longrightarrow \forall^{s t} z B\right) \equiv \forall z \exists^{f i n} y^{\prime} \forall x\left(\forall y \in y^{\prime} A \Longrightarrow B\right) \tag{A.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

## A. 3 Shadows and S-properties

Definitions. For $x$ and $y$ in a standard metric space $E$, the notation $x \simeq y$ means that the distance from $x$ to $y$ is infinitesimal. If there exists in that space a standard $x_{0}$ such that $x \simeq x_{0}$, the element $x$ is called nearstandard in $E$ and the standard point $x_{0}$ is called the standard part (or the shadow) of $x$ (it is unique) and is also denoted by ${ }^{o} x$. The halo of $x$, denoted by $\operatorname{hal}(x)$, is the set, usually external, of all $y$ such that $x \simeq y$.

For any subset $X$ of $E$, a point $x \in E$ is called nearstandard in $X$ if there exists a standard point $x_{0} \in X$ such that $x \simeq x_{0}$. We recall that, if $X$ is standard, $X$ is open if and only if it contains the halo of all its standard elements. The shadow of a subset $X$ of $E$, denoted by ${ }^{\circ} X$, is the unique standard set whose standard elements are precisely those whose halo intersects $X$.

Let $E$ and $F$ be standard metric spaces, and $g$ be an internal function defined on $\mathcal{D}(g) \subset E$ and with values in $F . g$ is called $S$-continuous at $x_{0} \in \mathcal{D}(g)$ if for all $x \simeq x_{0}, g(x) \simeq g\left(x_{0}\right)$ holds, S-continuous in $E \times F$ if it is S-continuous at each point $x \in \mathcal{D}(g)$ such that $(x, g(x))$ is nearstandard in $E \times F$.

For $g$ standard, the continuity and the S-continuity in $\mathcal{D}(g) \times \mathcal{B}(g)$, where $\mathcal{B}(g)$ is a target of $g$, coincide.

The shadow in $E \times F$ of the graph of a S-continuous function $g$ is the graph of a standard continuous function $g_{0}$, called the shadow of $g$, and denoted by ${ }^{\circ} g$.

## A. 4 Permanence principles

In ZFC in principle all sets are defined using the only non logical symbol $\in$. In IST there is also the possibility to define collections with the non logical symbol st. Those collections which fall outside the range of ZFC are called external sets. External sets are often easily recognized: mosty some elementary classical property fails to hold. For instance, the set of infinitesimal real numbers hal (0) must be external, for it constitutes a bounded subset of $\mathbb{R}$ without lower upper bound.

It happens sometimes in classical mathematics that a property is assumed, or proved, on a certain domain, and that afterwards it is remarked that the character of the property and the nature of the domain are incompatible. So actually the property must be valid on a large domain. In Nonstandard Analysis, statements which affirm that the validity of a property exceeds the domain where it was established in direct way are called permanence principles.

Many permanence results used in Nonstandard Analysis are based upon the self evident statement:

Principle A.4.1 (Cauchy principle) No external set is internal.
It has the following frequently used application.
Lemma A.4.1 (Robinson's Lemma) If $r$ is an internal real function such that $r(t) \simeq 0$ for all limited $t \geq 0$, then there exists $\nu \simeq+\infty$ such that $r(t) \simeq 0$ for all $t \in[0, \nu]$.

Proof. Indeed, $\{l \in \mathbb{R} / l \geq 1$, $l$ limited $\} \subset\{l \in \mathbb{R} / \forall t \in[0, l]|r(t)|<1 / l\}$. The first set is external and the second set is internal. By the Cauchy principle the inclusion is strict.

As useful consequences of Cauchy's principle which will be used throughout this thesis we have:

Lemma A.4.2 Let $I$ be an internal set and $h: I \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be an internal function such that $h(t) \simeq 0$ for all $t \in I$. Then $\sup _{t \in I}\{h(t)\} \simeq 0$.

Proof. We have $\left\{l \in \mathbb{R}_{+} / l \notin \operatorname{hal}(0)\right\} \subset\{l \in \mathbb{R} / \forall t \in I|h(t)|<l\}$. The first set is external otherwise hal(0) would be internal, and the second set is internal. By the Cauchy principle the inclusion is strict.

Lemma A.4.3 (Corollary of Lemma A.4.2) Let $a<b, b-a$ limited, and let $g, \tilde{g}$ : $[a, b] \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be internal integrable functions such that $g(t) \simeq \tilde{g}(t)$ for all $t \in[a, b]$. Then

$$
\int_{a}^{b} g(t) d t \simeq \int_{a}^{b} \tilde{g}(t) d t
$$

Lemma A.4.4 If $\mathcal{P}($.$) is an internal property such that \mathcal{P}(\lambda)$ holds for all appreciable real numbers $\lambda>0$, then there exists $0<\lambda_{0} \simeq 0$ such that $\mathcal{P}\left(\lambda_{0}\right)$ holds.

We conclude this appendix with the following remark.
Remark A.4.1 The use of Nonstandard Analysis in perturbation theory of differential equations goes back to the seventies with the Reebian school. It gave birth to the nonstandard perturbation theory of differential equations which has became today a well-established tool in asymptotic theory (see the special five-digits classification 34E18 of the 2000 Mathematics Subject Classification). To have an idea of the rich literature on the subject, the reader is referred to general references below, and the references therein.

## A. 5 Bibliography

[1] I. P. Van Den Berg, "Nonstandard Asymptotic Analysis", Lecture Notes in Math. 1249, Springer-Verlag, 1987.
[2] F. Diener and M. Diener (Eds.), "Nonstandard Analysis in Practice", Universitext, Springer-Verlag, 1995.
[3] F. Diener and G. Reeb, "Analyse Non Standard", Hermann, 1989.
[4] M. Davis, "Applied Nonstandard Analysis", New York, Wiley, 1977.
[5] M. Diener and C. Lobry (Eds.), "Analyse Non Standard et représentation du réel", OPU, Alger, CNRS, Paris, 1985.
[6] M. Diener and G. Wallet (Eds.), "Mathématiques Finitaires et Analyse Non Standard", Publication mathématique de l'Université de Paris 7, Vol. 31-1 et 31-2, 1989.
[7] G. Kreisel, "An Application of Model Theory to Algebra, Analysis, Probability", Inter. Sympos. Pasadena, Californie 1967, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, New York, 1969.
[8] G. Kreisel, "Foundations of Infinitesimal Calculus", Prindle Weber \& Schmidt, Boston 1976.
[9] D. Laugwitz, "The Theory of Infinitesimals: An Introduction to N.S.A", Acad. Naz. dei Lincei, Roma 1980.
[10] R. Lutz and M. Goze, "Nonstandard Analysis: a practical guide with applications", Lectures Notes in Math. 881, Springer-Verlag, 1982.
[11] R. Lutz and T. Sari, "Application of Nonstandard Analysis in boundary value problems in singular perturbation theory", in Theory and Applications of singularly perturbations (Oberwolfach 1981), Lectures Notes in Math. 942, Springer-Verlag, 113-135, 1982.
[12] W. A. J. Luxemburg and A. Robinson, "Contributions to Nonstandard Analysis", North Holland, Publisching Comp., Amsterdam-London, 1972.
[13] E. Nelson, Internal Set Theory: A New Approach to Nonstandard Analysis, Bull. Amer. Math. Soc., 83 (1977), 1165-1198.
[14] E. Nelson, "Radically Elementary Probability Theory", Princeton University Tress, 1987.
[15] G. Reeb, Mathématique non standard (essai de vulgarisation), Bull. APMEP, 328 (1981) 259-273.
[16] A. Robinson, "Nonstandard Analysis", American Elsevier, New York, 1974.
[17] T. Sari, Stroboscopy and Averaging, in Colloque Trajectorien à la mémoire de G. Reeb et J.L. Callot, Strasbourg-Obernai, 12-16 juin 1995. A. Fruchard et A. Troesch, Editeurs. Publication de l'IRMA, 13 (1995), 95-124.
[18] T. Sari, Nonstandard Perturbation Theory of Differential Equations, presented as an invited talk at the International Research Symposium on Nonstandard Analysis and its Applications, ICMS, Edinburgh, 11-17 August 1996 (http://www.math.univ-mulhouse.fr/~geometrie/sari/papers.html).
[19] T. Skolem, Fundamenta Mathematicae, 23 (1934), 150-161.
[20] K. D. Stroyan and W. A. J. Luxemburg, "Introduction to The Theory of Infinitesimals", New York-London, Academic Press 1976.
[21] A. K. Zvonkin and M. A. Shubin, "Nonstandard Analysis and Singular Perturbations of Ordinary Differential Equations", Russian Math. Surveys 39, 1984.

## Appendix B

## Sur la moyennisation dans les systèmes à plusieurs fréquences

Par Mustapha LAKRIB ${ }^{1}$


#### Abstract

In this paper, the behaviour of solutions of differential equations of the form $\dot{x}=\varepsilon X(x, \phi), \dot{\phi}=\Omega(x)+\mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$, is studied using the method of averaging. This method consists in replacing $X$ by $\bar{X}$, its spatial average, and considering instead the equation $\dot{y}=\varepsilon \bar{X}(y)$. For most initial conditions $x-y$ remains small, but for others, resonance between $\Omega_{1}(x), \ldots, \Omega_{m}(x)$ is significant and $x-y$ can become large. Rather than to consider a near identity change of variables (which is classical approach), we exploit through the local study of the slow variable, the proximity of the temporal and spatial averages of $X$, to show that $x-y$ remains small as long as $x$ evolves into the $\sqrt{\varepsilon}$-nonresonant domain. Terminology in formulation and proofs are the one of the Nonstandard Analysis.


(1991) A.M.S Subject Classification Codes. 34C29, 34E10, 03H05.

Keywords and Phrases. Averaging, regular perturbations, nonstandard analysis.

## B. 1 Introduction

On considère un système d'équations différentielles de la forme

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\dot{x}=\varepsilon X(x, \phi)  \tag{B.1}\\
\dot{\phi}=\Omega(x)+\mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)
\end{array}\right.
$$

où (') $=d / d \tau, \tau \in \mathbb{R}, x \in \mathbb{R}^{n}, \phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}=\mathbb{R}^{m} / 2 \pi \mathbb{Z}^{m}$ le tore de dimension $m$, et $\varepsilon>0$ un petit paramètre réel. On précisera la régularité du second membre

[^0]de (B.1). Le système (B.1) est composé d'une variable lente à $n$ composantes: $x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}$ et d'une variable rapide à $m$ composantes: $\phi_{1}, \phi_{2}, \ldots, \phi_{m}$. La méthode de moyennisation consiste à remplacer ce système par celui (plus simple) obtenu en moyennisant $X$ par rapport aux variables de phase
\[

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{y}=\varepsilon \bar{X}(y) \tag{B.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

\]

où la fonction moyenne $\bar{X}$ est définie par

$$
\bar{X}(y)=\frac{\int_{\mathbf{T}^{m}} X(y, \phi) d \phi}{\int_{\mathbf{T}^{m}} d \phi}=\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{m}} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} \cdots \int_{0}^{2 \pi} X(y, \phi) d \phi_{1} \ldots d \phi_{m} .
$$

Pourvu que les trajectoires du système (B.1) soient uniformement réparties sur la surface du tore $\mathbf{T}^{m}$, il est raisonnable de remplacer $X$ par sa moyenne sur $\mathbf{T}^{m}$ et espérer approximer les composantes lentes des solutions du système original par les solutions du système moyennisé. Cependant si les fréquences sont résonantes, i.e., $\Omega_{1}, \Omega_{2}, \ldots, \Omega_{m}$ sont rationnellement dépendantes, la répartition du mouvement n'est plus uniforme (le mouvement non perturbé est partout dense dans un tore de dimension inférieure) et le mouvement moyennisé n'est plus nécessairement proche du mouvement réel. Pour les systèmes génériques, les fréquences sont non résonantes pour presque toutes les valeurs de $x$. Il est donc raisonnable d'espérer que, pour la plupart des conditions initiales, la méthode de moyennisation apporte une description correcte de l'évolution de la variable lente du véritable mouvement. Pour $m=2$, Arnold [2] et Neishtadt [10] montrent que c'est effectivement le cas, le premier en supposant que la variation du rapport des fréquences le long des trajectoires du système original est strictement monotone; le second impose une condition qui force les trajectoires du système moyennisé à ne visiter les résonances qu'au plus une fois, de manière transversale et à vitesse finie. Des résultats généraux $(m \geq 3)$ sont établis par Anosov [1] et Kasuga [8] sous l'hypothèse d'indépendance des fréquences au sens que le rang de la dérivée des fréquences, par rapport à la variable lente, est égale au nombre des composantes de la variable rapide. Une estimation de la mesure de l'ensemble des conditions initiales qui doivent être exclues dans ce cas (mais aussi dans le cas où $m=2$ ) a été obtenue par Neishtadt [11] (voir [10] pour $m=2$ ).

La démonstration des résultats de moyennisation repose sur le principe suivant $[3,4,9]$ : On cherche à définir une nouvelle variable lente $z=x+\varepsilon u(x, \phi)$, proche de la variable d'origine, dont l'évolution soit décrite par un système proche du système moyennisé

$$
\frac{d z}{d \tau}=\varepsilon \bar{X}(z)+\text { termes d'ordre plus élevé en } \varepsilon .
$$

Le résultat recherché suivra alors de l'approximation de $x$ par $z$ d'une part et de celle de $z$ par $y$ d'autre part, sur un intervalle de temps d'ordre $1 / \varepsilon$.

On vérifie que la fonction $u$ doit satisfaire l'équation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Omega(x) \cdot \frac{\partial u}{\partial \phi}=-\tilde{X}(x, \phi) \tag{B.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

où $\tilde{X}$ désigne la partie purement oscillante de $X$; soit pour les coefficients de Fourier $u_{k}$ et $X_{k}$ de $u$ et $X\left(k \in \mathbb{Z}^{m}\right)$ :

$$
i(k, \Omega(x)) u_{k}(x)=-X_{k}(x),
$$

équation dans laquelle apparaissent les petits dénominateurs $(k, \Omega(x))$. La procédure est alors la suivante:
i) En raison de la décroissance rapide des coefficients de Fourier de $X$ ( $X$ étant supposée suffisamment régulière), on peut tronquer les séries de Fourier à l'ordre $N=N(\varepsilon)$ et remplacer dans (B.3) $\tilde{X}$ par $\tilde{X}_{N}$, la somme partielle d'ordre $N$ de la série de Fourier $\tilde{X}$; ce qui revient à dire qu'il est inutile de tenir compte des résonances qui peuvent se produire entre des harmoniques d'ordres très élevés.
ii) On résoud exactement l'équation ainsi obtenue sur le domaine non résonant, c'est à dire l'ensemble des $x$ de l'espace des variables lentes tels que les dénominateurs ne soient pas trop petits. Et l'on traite séparément les traversées de zones résonantes, complémentaires de cet ensemble. Pour la plupart des conditions initiales, les zones résonantes sont franchies assez rapidement pour que l'écart entre $x(\tau)$ et $y(\tau)$ ne croisse outre mesure lors de ces franchissements. Les autres conditions initiales, qui correspondent aux trajectoires capturées par les résonances ou errant le long des surfaces résonantes, en passant de l'une à l'autre, constituent l'ensemble de mesure petite pour lequel la méthode de moyennisation ne s'applique pas. Notons que dans sa simplicité, ce qui précède constitue le noyau de preuves plus complexes.

Dans l'étude ci-après, moyennant les méthodes non standard $[5,6,7]$, on se propose d'apporter une justification autre que celle décrite plus haut (considerée comme classique) de la méthode de moyennisation, en dehors des zones de résonance.

Le travail est organisé de la manière suivante: A la Section B. 2 on rappele les notions de moyennes temporelle et spatiale, puis on donne une condition nécessaire et suffisante pour que celles-là soient infiniment proches pour les fonctions qui nous intéressent. A la Section B.3, on définit la notion de domaine $\sqrt{\varepsilon}$-non résonant sur lequel on montre l'approximation de la composante lente de la solution du système original par la solution du système moyennisé. L'approche n'est plus basée sur un changement de variables proche de l'identité. A travers l'étude locale de la variable lente, la démonstration, basée sur la méthode de stroboscopie [6, 12, 13], exploite le fait que dans un tel domaine, les moyennes temporelles le long du flot associé au système non perturbé ( $\varepsilon=0$ ) et les moyennes spatiales sont infiniment proches.

## B. 2 Moyennes temporelle et spatiale

Soit $\Omega=\left(\Omega_{1}, \ldots, \Omega_{m}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$, $\Omega$ fixé, et soit le système d'équations différentielles ordinaires défini sur le tore $\mathbf{T}^{m}, m \in \mathbf{N}^{*}$, par

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\phi}=\Omega . \tag{B.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Au système (B.4) est associé le flot $\left\{h^{\tau}\right\}_{\tau \in \mathrm{R}}$ défini par $h^{\tau}(\phi)=\phi+\Omega \cdot \tau, \tau \in \mathbb{R}$ et $\phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}$.

Soit $X: \mathbf{T}^{m} \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ une fonction intégrable.
Définition B.2.1 On appelle moyenne temporelle de la fonction $X$ le long du flot $\left\{h^{\tau}\right\}_{\tau \in \mathrm{R}}$, la fonction $X^{*}$ définie par

$$
\begin{aligned}
X^{*}(\phi) & =\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} X\left(h^{\tau}(\phi)\right) d \tau \\
& =\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} X(\phi+\Omega \cdot \tau) d \tau, \quad \phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}
\end{aligned}
$$

Abus de language: Sans risque de confusion, nous conviendrons d'appeler moyenne temporelle de $X$ la quantité

$$
\begin{aligned}
X^{*}(\phi, T) & =\frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} X\left(h^{\tau}(\phi)\right) d \tau \\
& =\frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} X(\phi+\Omega \cdot \tau) d \tau, \quad \phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}, T \in \mathbb{R}_{+}^{*}
\end{aligned}
$$

Définition B.2.2 On appelle moyenne spatiale de la fonction $X$ sur le tore $\mathbf{T}^{m}$, le vecteur scalaire $\bar{X}$ défini par

$$
\bar{X}=\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{m}} \int_{\mathbf{T}^{m}} X(\phi) d \phi
$$

Si on suppose que $X$ admet un developpement en série de Fourier, $X$ s'écrit: $X(\phi)=\bar{X}+\tilde{X}(\phi), \phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}$, où $\bar{X}$ est la moyenne spatiale de $X$ et $\tilde{X}$ la partie oscillante de $X$. On a

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{X}(\phi)=\sum_{k \neq 0} X_{k} e^{i(k, \phi)} \tag{B.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

où $k \in \mathbb{Z}^{m}$ et les $X_{k}$ sont les coefficients de Fourier de $X$.
Nous allons commencer par examiner l'approximation des moyennes temporelle et spatiale des éléments de la bases $\left\{e^{i(k, \phi)}\right\}_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^{m}}$ (le long du flot $\left\{h^{\tau}\right\}_{\tau}$ ), puis moyennant (B.5) nous traiterons le cas de la fonction $X$.

Le résultat du lemme ci-après est une caractérisation de l'approximation (au sens d'infiniment proche) des moyennes temporelle et spatiale des monômes trigonométriques homogènes $e^{i(k, \phi)}, k \in \mathbb{Z}^{m}, k \neq 0$.

Lemme B.2.1 Soit $p(\phi)=e^{i(k, \phi)}, k \in \mathbb{Z}^{m}, k \neq 0$. Les deux propositions suivantes sont équivalentes:
$P_{1}: \quad \forall \lim _{l \in \mathbb{R}}:|(k, \Omega)| \geq l \cdot \sqrt{\varepsilon}$
$P_{2}: \quad \exists T_{0} \in \mathbb{R}, T_{0} \simeq+\infty, \sqrt{\varepsilon} T_{0} \simeq 0:$

$$
\forall T \in \mathbb{R}, \forall \phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}\left(T \geq T_{0} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad p^{*}(\phi, T) \simeq 0(=\bar{p})\right)
$$

## Preuve du Lemme B.2.1

## i) Condition nécessaire:

$k$ s'écrit: $k=\left(k_{1}, \ldots, k_{j}, \ldots k_{m}\right)$. $k$ étant non nul, il existe $j$ tel que $k_{j} \neq 0$. On a d'une part

$$
\int_{0}^{2 \pi} e^{i\left(k_{1} \phi_{1}+\ldots+k_{j} \phi_{j}+\ldots+k_{m} \phi_{m}\right)} d \phi_{j}=\left.\frac{e^{i\left(k_{1} \phi_{1}+\ldots+k_{j} \phi_{j}+\ldots+k_{m} \phi_{m}\right)}}{i k_{j}}\right|_{0} ^{2 \pi}=0
$$

et donc

$$
\begin{aligned}
\bar{p} & =\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{m}} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} \cdots \int_{0}^{2 \pi} e^{i\left(k_{1} \phi_{1}+\cdots+k_{j} \phi_{j}+\cdots+k_{m} \phi_{m}\right)} d \phi_{1} \ldots d \phi_{j} \ldots d \phi_{m} \\
& =\left.\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{m}} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} \cdots \int_{0}^{2 \pi} \frac{e^{i\left(k_{1} \phi_{1}+\ldots+k_{j} \phi_{j}+\ldots+k_{m} \phi_{m}\right)}}{i k_{j}}\right|_{0} ^{2 \pi} d \phi_{1} \ldots \widehat{d \phi_{j}} \ldots d \phi_{m} \\
& =\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{m}} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} \cdots \int_{0}^{2 \pi} 0 . d \phi_{1} \ldots \widehat{d \phi_{j}} \ldots d \phi_{m}=0
\end{aligned}
$$

D'autre part, pour $\phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}$ et $T \in \mathbb{R}$

$$
\begin{align*}
p^{*}(\phi, T) & =\frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} p(\phi+\Omega \cdot \tau) d \tau=\frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} e^{i(k, \phi+\Omega \cdot \tau)} d \tau  \tag{B.6}\\
& =\frac{e^{i(k, \phi)}}{T i(k, \Omega)}\left[e^{i(k, \Omega) \tau}\right]_{0}^{T}=\frac{e^{i(k, \phi)}}{T i(k, \Omega)}\left[e^{i(k, \Omega) T}-1\right]
\end{align*}
$$

D'où $\left|p^{*}(\phi, T)\right| \leq \frac{2}{T|(k, \Omega)|}$. Or, par hypothèse, on a: $\forall \lim l \in \mathbb{R}:|(k, \Omega)| \geq l \sqrt{\varepsilon}$, par permanence (Principe de Cauchy, voir $[5,6]$ ) cette propriété reste vraie jusqu'à un certain $\nu \in \mathbb{R}, \nu \simeq+\infty$ et $\sqrt{\varepsilon} \nu \simeq 0$. Ainsi

$$
\exists \nu \in \mathbb{R}, \nu \simeq+\infty, \sqrt{\varepsilon} \nu \simeq 0, \text { tel que }:|(k, \Omega)| \geq \nu \sqrt{\varepsilon}
$$

Posons $T_{0}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{\varepsilon \nu}}$. On a

$$
T_{0}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{\varepsilon} \nu} \sqrt{\nu} \simeq+\infty \quad \text { et } \quad \sqrt{\varepsilon} T_{0}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{\nu}} \simeq 0,
$$

et pour $T \geq T_{0}$, on a

$$
\left|p^{*}(\phi, T)\right| \leq \frac{2}{T|(k, \Omega)|} \leq \frac{2}{T_{0}|(k, \Omega)|} \leq \frac{2}{\frac{1}{\sqrt{\varepsilon \nu}} \sqrt{\varepsilon \nu}}=\frac{2}{\sqrt{\nu}} \simeq 0
$$

Ce qui termine la preuve de la nécessité de $P_{2}$ pour $P_{1}$.

## ii) Condition suffisante:

On montre que la contraposée correspondante est vraie. On suppose alors l'existence d'un réel limité $l$ tel que: $|(k, \Omega)| \leq l \sqrt{\varepsilon}$. On peut même supposer que: $|(k, \Omega)|=$ $l \sqrt{\varepsilon}$. On supposera encore que $(k, \Omega) \geq 0$. Soit $T_{0} \in \mathbb{R}, T_{0} \simeq+\infty$ et $\sqrt{\varepsilon} T_{0} \simeq 0$. Deux cas sont possibles:

1. $l=0$ :

Pour $T \geq T_{0}$ et $\phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}$, on a

$$
\begin{aligned}
p^{*}(\phi, T) & =\frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} e^{i(k, \phi+\Omega . \tau)} d \tau=\frac{e^{i(k, \phi)}}{T} \int_{0}^{T} e^{i(k, \Omega) \tau} d \tau \\
& =e^{i(k, \phi)} \quad \operatorname{car} e^{i(k, \Omega) \tau}=e^{0}=1 ; \forall \tau \in[0, T]
\end{aligned}
$$

et donc pour $T=T_{0}$ et $\phi=0$, on a $p^{*}\left(0, T_{0}\right)=1 \nsucceq 0(=\bar{p})$. Ainsi

$$
\left(\forall T_{0} \in \mathbb{R}: T_{0} \simeq+\infty \text { et } \sqrt{\varepsilon} T_{0} \simeq 0\right), \exists T \geq T_{0}, \exists \phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}: p^{*}(\phi, T) \not 千 0(=\bar{p}) .
$$

2. $l \neq 0$ :

Pour $T \geq T_{0}$ et $\phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}$, on a

$$
p^{*}(\phi, T)=\frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} e^{i(k, \phi+\Omega . \tau)} d \tau=e^{i(k, \phi)} \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} e^{i(k, \Omega) \tau} d \tau=e^{i(k, \phi)} \frac{e^{i(k, \Omega) T}-1}{i(k, \Omega) T}
$$

Comme $l$ est limité et $\sqrt{\varepsilon} T_{0} \simeq 0$, alors $(k, \Omega) T_{0}=l \sqrt{\varepsilon} T_{0} \simeq 0$ et $\frac{e^{i(k, \Omega) T_{0}}-1}{i(k, \Omega) T_{0}} \simeq$ 1 , et donc $p^{*}\left(\phi, T_{0}\right) \simeq e^{i(k, \phi)}$. Il suffit alors de prendre $\phi=0$ pour avoir $p^{*}\left(0, T_{0}\right) \simeq e^{i(k, 0)}=1 \not 千 0(=\bar{p})$. Ce qui termine la preuve du lemme B.2.1.

Remarque B.2.1 Le lemme B.2.1 apporte une estimation du temps requis pour que les moyennes temporelle et spatiale de $e^{i(k, \phi)}$ (le long du flot $\left\{h^{\tau}\right\}_{\tau}$ ) soient proches $\grave{a}$ $\chi$ près, puisque de (B.6) on a

$$
\left|p^{*}(\phi, T)\right| \leq \frac{2}{T|(k, \Omega)|}
$$

et donc

$$
T_{0}=\frac{2}{\chi|(k, \Omega)|}
$$

Ce temps est inversement proportionnel à la distance $|(k, \Omega)|$ de la résonance de numéro $k$. D'où, si on entoure la résonance par une zone résonante de "largeur" $\delta$ définie par $|(k, \Omega)| \leq \delta$, en dehors de cette zone les moyennes temporelle et spatiale de la fonction $e^{i(k, \phi)}$ deviennent proches à $\chi$ près après un temps $T_{0}=2 / \delta \chi$. (Dans notre cas, $\delta=\sqrt{\varepsilon} \nu, \chi=2 / \sqrt{\nu}$ et $\left.T_{0}=1 / \sqrt{\varepsilon \nu}\right)$.

Reprenons la fonction $X: \mathbf{T}^{m} \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$. Pour $\phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}, X(\phi)=\bar{X}+\tilde{X}(\phi)$ où $\bar{X}$ est la moyenne spatiale de $X$ et $\tilde{X}$ est la partie oscillante de $X$. En utilisant le résultat du lemme B.2.1, on se propose ci-après de montrer que pour $\phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}$ et $T \geq T_{0}$, où $T_{0}$ est un réel que l'on déterminera, on a

$$
\tilde{X}^{*}(\phi, T)=\frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} \tilde{X}(\phi+\Omega \cdot \tau) d \tau \simeq 0
$$

Ce qui a pour conséquence

$$
X^{*}(\phi, T)=\bar{X}+\tilde{X}^{*}(\phi, T) \simeq \bar{X}
$$

i.e.; les moyennes temporelle et spatiale de $X$ sont infiniment proches.

Pour se faire, décomposons $\tilde{X}$ de sorte que $\tilde{X}(\phi)=\tilde{X}_{N}(\phi)+R_{N}(\phi)$ où

$$
\tilde{X}_{N}(\phi)=\sum_{1 \leq|k| \leq N} X_{k} e^{i(k, \phi)} \text { et } R_{N}(\phi)=\sum_{|k|>N} X_{k} e^{i(k, \phi)} .
$$

$k \in \mathbb{Z}^{m} ; X_{k}$ les coefficients de Fourier de $X$ et $N$ un entier positif que l'on déterminera. On choisit alors $N$ de sorte que $R_{N}$ (et delà $R_{N}^{*}$ ) soit petit, puis on montre que $\tilde{X}_{N}^{*}$ est petit aussi, et donc $\tilde{X}^{*}$ sera de même.

Soient $\phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}$ et $T \in \mathbb{R}$. Nous avons,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{X}_{N}^{*}(\phi, T) & =\frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} \tilde{X}_{N}(\phi+\Omega \cdot \tau) d \tau=\frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} \sum_{1 \leq|k| \leq N} X_{k} e^{i(k, \phi+\Omega \cdot \tau)} d \tau \\
& =\sum_{1 \leq|k| \leq N} X_{k} \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} e^{i(k, \phi+\Omega \cdot \tau)} d \tau .
\end{aligned}
$$

Si on suppose que $X$ est analytique, les $X_{k}$ sont à décroissance exponentielle de sorte que $\left\|X_{k}\right\| \leq c_{1} \exp \left(-c_{2}|k|\right)$. On suppose par ailleurs que l'hypothèse suivante est réalisée: $\forall \lim _{l \in \mathbb{R}}, \forall k \in \mathbb{Z}^{m}, k \neq 0:|(k, \Omega)| \geq l \cdot \sqrt{\varepsilon}$. Le principe de Cauchy (voir [5, 6]) permet alors d'affirmer l'existence de $\nu \in \mathbb{R}, \nu \simeq+\infty$ et $\sqrt{\varepsilon} \nu \simeq 0$ tel qu'on ait:

$$
\forall k \in \mathbb{Z}^{m}, k \neq 0:|(k, \Omega)| \geq \nu \sqrt{\varepsilon} .
$$

Alors pour $T \geq T_{0}=1 / \sqrt{\varepsilon \nu}$, nous avons (voir i) de la preuve du lemme B.2.1)

$$
\left\|\tilde{X}_{N}^{*}(\phi, T)\right\| \leq 2 \sum_{1 \leq|k| \leq N} \frac{\left\|X_{k}\right\|}{T|(k, \Omega)|} \leq 2 \sum_{1 \leq|k| \leq N} \frac{c_{1} e^{-c_{2}|k|}}{\sqrt{\nu}} \leq 2 c_{1} \sum_{1 \leq|k| \leq N} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\nu}} .
$$

Comme le nombre de $k \in \mathbb{Z}^{m}$ tels que $|k| \leq N$ n'excède pas $2^{m} N^{m}$, alors

$$
\left\|\tilde{X}_{N}^{*}(\phi, T)\right\| \leq 2^{m+1} c_{1} \frac{N^{m}}{\sqrt{\nu}} .
$$

De l'analycité de $X$, on déduit que pour $\mu \in(0,1 / 2)$, la norme de $R_{N}$ est majorée par $\mu$ pourvu que $N \geq N(\mu)=[c \log (1 / \mu)]$ (voir [9], Appendice 1), donc pour $\mu=1 / \sqrt{\nu}$ et $N=[c \log \sqrt{\nu}]$, on a

$$
\left\|\tilde{X}_{N}^{*}(\phi, T)\right\| \leq 2^{m+1} \frac{(c \log \sqrt{\nu})^{m}}{\sqrt{\nu}} \simeq 0
$$

et delà

$$
\left\|\tilde{X}^{*}(\phi, T)\right\| \leq\left\|\tilde{X}_{N}^{*}(\phi, T)\right\|+\left\|R_{N}^{*}(\phi, T)\right\| \leq 2^{m+1} \frac{(c \log \sqrt{\nu})^{m}}{\sqrt{\nu}}+\frac{1}{\sqrt{\nu}} \simeq 0
$$

puisque

$$
\left.\left\|R_{N}^{*}(\phi, T)\right\| \leq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} \| R_{N}(\phi+\Omega \cdot \tau)\right) \| d \tau \leq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\nu}} d \tau=\frac{1}{\sqrt{\nu}}
$$

A ce stade du raisonnement, en utilisant la linéarité de l'intégration, une argumentation analogue à celle de ii) de la preuve du lemme B.2.1, permet de déduire le résultat suivant:

Lemme B.2.2 Les deux propositions suivantes sont équivalentes:
$P_{1}: \quad \forall^{l i m} l \in \mathbb{R}, \forall k \in \mathbb{Z}^{m}, k \neq 0:|(k, \Omega)| \geq l \cdot \sqrt{\varepsilon}$
$P_{2}: \quad \exists T_{0} \in \mathbb{R}, T_{0} \simeq+\infty, \sqrt{\varepsilon} T_{0} \simeq 0:$

$$
\forall T \in \mathbb{R}, \forall \phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}\left(T \geq T_{0} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad X^{*}(\phi, T) \simeq \bar{X}\right)
$$

Remarque B.2.2 C'est pour simplifier les calculs que nous avons supposé $X$ analytique. Ce qui précède reste vraie pour $X$ de classe $C^{2 m+1}$ puisque dans ce cas aussi la suite des coefficients de Fourier de $X$ est décroissante (bien que la décroissance ne soit pas exponentielle) de sorte que pour $\mu>0$, la norme de $R_{N}$ soit majorée par $\mu$ dès lors que $N=N(\mu)=\left[1 / \mu^{2 m}\right]$ (voir [9], Appendice 1).

## B. 3 Moyennisation et $\sqrt{\varepsilon}$-non résonance

Considérons le système d'équations différentielles ordinaires

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
\frac{d x}{d \tau} & =\varepsilon X(x, \phi)  \tag{B.7}\\
\frac{d \phi}{d \tau} & =\Omega(x)+\mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)
\end{align*}\right.
$$

où $x \in \mathbf{B}, \mathbf{B}$ étant un compact standard de $\mathbb{R}^{n}$, et $\phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}$. On suppose que
i) $X$ et $\Omega$ sont standard de classe $\mathbf{C}^{1}$.
ii) $X$ est analytique en $\phi$.

Remarque B.3.1 L'hypothèse ii) peut être affaiblie en supposant $X$ de classe $C^{2 m+1}$ (voir remarque B.2.2).

Puisque nous nous intéressons au comportement des solutions du système original et du système moyennisé pour des intervalles du temps $\tau$ d'ordre $1 / \varepsilon$, il est plus commode d'introduire un changement dans l'échelle du temps en posant $t=\varepsilon \tau$ (temps lent).

Ainsi, par rapport au nouveau temps, le système (B.7) s'écrit (en gardant la même notation pour le système obtenu)

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d x}{d t}=X(x, \phi)  \tag{B.8}\\
\frac{d \phi}{d t}=\frac{\Omega(x)}{\varepsilon}+\mathcal{O}(1)
\end{array}\right.
$$

Soit $(x(t), \phi(t))$ sa solution de condition initiale $(x(0), \phi(0))$.
Soit $\bar{X}$ la moyenne sur une période (par rapport à la variable angulaire $\phi$ ) de $X$, définie par

$$
\bar{X}(y)=\frac{1}{(2 \pi)^{m}} \int_{\mathbf{T}^{m}} X(y, \phi) d \phi, \quad y \in \mathbf{B}
$$

Notons par $y(t)$, la solution, issue de $\mathrm{y}(0)$, du système moyennisé

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d y}{d t}=\bar{X}(y) \tag{B.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Soit $J=[0, \omega), 0<\omega \leq+\infty$, le demi-intervalle positif maximal d'existence de $y$, et soit $b$ limité dans $\mathbb{R}_{+}, b<\omega$, tel que $y([0, b])$ soit non infiniment proche de la frontière de $\mathbf{B}$.

## B.3.1 Domaine $\sqrt{\varepsilon}$-non résonant

Définition B.3.1 L'ensemble $\mathbf{D} \subset \mathbb{R}^{n}$ défini par

$$
\mathbf{D}=\left\{x \in \mathbf{B} / \forall^{l i m} l \in \mathbb{R}, \forall k \in \mathbb{Z}^{m}, k \neq 0:|(k, \Omega(x))| \geq l \sqrt{\varepsilon}\right\}
$$

est appelé domaine $\sqrt{\varepsilon}$-non résonant.
Proposition B.3.1 Soit $x \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$, alors

$$
x \in \mathbf{D} \Leftrightarrow\left\{\begin{array}{c}
\left(\exists T_{0} \in \mathbb{R}, T_{0} \simeq+\infty, \sqrt{\varepsilon} T_{0} \simeq 0\right): \forall T \in \mathbb{R}, \forall \phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}, \\
T \geq T_{0} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad X^{*}(x ; \phi, T) \simeq \bar{X}(x)
\end{array}\right.
$$

où

$$
X^{*}(x ; \phi, T)=\frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} X(x, \phi+\Omega(x) \cdot \tau) d \tau
$$

Preuve. Cette proposition est une conséquence du lemme B.2.2.

## B.3.2 Résultat principal

Le théorème ci-après permet l'approximation (au sens d'infiniment proche) de la composante lente $x(t)$ de la solution $(x(t), \phi(t))$ de (B.8) par la solution $y(t)$ de (B.9) tant que l'évolution de $x(t)$ se fait dans le domaine $\sqrt{\varepsilon}$-non résonant.

Théorème B.3.1 Avec les hypothèses i) et ii), on suppose que les conditions initiales de $x(t)$ et $y(t)$ sont standard, avec $x(0)=y(0) \in \mathbf{D}$. Alors

$$
\forall t \in[0, b], \quad x(t) \simeq y(t), \quad \text { tant que } x(t) \text { reste dans } \mathbf{D} .
$$

Remarque B.3.2 Pour démontrer le théorème B.3.1, on utilise la méthode de stroboscopie [6, 12, 13]. Cela consiste à regarder une fonction non standard, oscillant autour d'une valeur moyenne, en des instants infiniment proches, à des endroits privilégiés pour ne retenir que la variation moyenne de cette fonction.

Méthode de stroboscopie $[6,12,13]$ Soit $\mathbf{B}$ un compact standard de $\mathbb{R}^{n}, I$ un intervalle de $\mathbb{R}, \bar{X}: \mathbf{B} \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ une fonction standard continue et $x: I \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ avec $0 \in I$ et $x(0)$ standard. On suppose que
i) Il existe $\mu>0$ tel qu'à chaque fois que $\left(t_{0}, x\left(t_{0}\right)\right) \in I \times \mathbb{R}^{n}$ est limité, il existe $t_{0}^{\prime} \in \mathbb{R}$ avec $t_{0}^{\prime}-t_{0}>\mu$, tel que la fonction $x$ vérifie la propriété stroboscopique

$$
t_{0}^{\prime} \simeq t_{0}, \quad \forall s \in\left[t_{0}, t_{0}^{\prime}\right] x(s) \simeq x\left(t_{0}\right), \quad \text { et } \frac{x\left(t_{0}^{\prime}\right)-x\left(t_{0}\right)}{t_{0}^{\prime}-t_{0}} \simeq \bar{X}\left(x\left(t_{0}\right)\right)
$$

$t_{0}$ et $t_{0}^{\prime}$ s'appellent instants successifs d'observation de la stroboscopie.
ii) Le problème à valeur initiale

$$
\frac{d y}{d t}=\bar{X}(y), \quad y(0)=x(0)
$$

possède une solution unique. Soit $y(t)$ cette solution.
Théorème B.3.2 (Lemme de stroboscopie) ([6] p.148, [12] p.11, [13] p.97) On suppose que les hypothèses i) et ii) sont réalisées. Soit $J=[0, \omega), 0<\omega \leq+\infty$, le demi intervalle positif maximal d'existence de $y$, et soit $b$ un réel limité, $b<\omega$, tel que $y([0, b])$ soit non infiniment proche de la frontière de $\mathbf{B}$. Alors, la fonction $x(t)$ est définie au moins sur $[0, b]$ et vérifie $x(t) \simeq y(t)$, pour tout $t \in[0, b]$.

## Preuve du Théorème B.3.1

On montre que la composante $x(t)$ de la solution $(x(t), \phi(t))$ du système (B.8) vérifie les hypothèses du théorème B.3.2. Ainsi, on suppose connu un instant d'observation
de la stroboscopie, soit $t_{0}$ cet instant, et on détermine l'instant suivant d'observation $t_{0}^{\prime}$. Posons $x_{0}=x\left(t_{0}\right)$ et $\phi_{0}=\phi\left(t_{0}\right)$. De l'hypothèse $x_{0} \in \mathbf{D}$, on a

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{c}
\left(\exists T_{0}, \quad T_{0} \simeq+\infty, \sqrt{\varepsilon} \cdot T_{0} \simeq 0\right): \forall T \in \mathbb{R}, \forall \phi \in \mathbf{T}^{m}  \tag{B.10}\\
T \geq T_{0} \Longrightarrow X^{*}\left(x_{0} ; \phi, T\right) \simeq \bar{X}
\end{array}\right.
$$

Sous le changement de variables

$$
T=\frac{t-t_{0}}{\varepsilon}, \quad \mathbf{y}(T)=\frac{x\left(t_{0}+\varepsilon T\right)-x_{0}}{\varepsilon}, \operatorname{avec} \varphi(T)=\phi\left(t_{0}+\varepsilon T\right)-\phi_{0}
$$

le système (B.8) devient

$$
\begin{cases}\frac{d \mathbf{y}}{d T}=X\left(x_{0}+\varepsilon \mathbf{y}(T), \phi_{0}+\varphi(T)\right) & ; \quad \mathbf{y}(0)=0  \tag{B.11}\\ \frac{d \varphi}{d T}=\Omega\left(x_{0}+\varepsilon \mathbf{y}(T)\right)+\varepsilon \mathcal{O}(1) & ; \quad \varphi(0)=0\end{cases}
$$

Considérons le système déduit de (B.11) pour $\varepsilon=0$

$$
\begin{cases}\frac{d \overline{\mathbf{y}}}{d T}=X\left(x_{0}, \phi_{0}+\bar{\varphi}(T)\right) & ; \quad \overline{\mathbf{y}}(0)=0  \tag{B.12}\\ \frac{d \bar{\varphi}}{d T}=\Omega\left(x_{0}\right) & ; \quad \bar{\varphi}(0)=0\end{cases}
$$

On vérifie que:
Lemme B.3.1 Si $(\mathbf{y}(T), \varphi(T))$ et $(\overline{\mathbf{y}}(T), \bar{\varphi}(T))$ sont les solutions respectives de (B.11) et (B.12), alors pour tout $T \in \mathbb{R}, 0<T \leq T_{0}$, où $T_{0}$ est défini par (B.10), on a

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
& \varphi(T) \simeq \bar{\varphi}(T)=\Omega\left(x_{0}\right) \cdot T  \tag{B.13}\\
& \frac{\mathbf{y}(T)}{T} \simeq \frac{\overline{\mathbf{y}}(T)}{T}=\frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} X\left(x_{0}, \phi_{0}+\Omega\left(x_{0}\right) \cdot \tau\right) d \tau
\end{align*}\right.
$$

La seconde approximation de (B.13) permet alors de définir le second instant d'observation de la stroboscopie en posant $t_{0}^{\prime}=t_{0}+\varepsilon \cdot T_{0}$. D'où

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{x\left(t_{0}^{\prime}\right)-x\left(t_{0}\right)}{t_{0}^{\prime}-t_{0}} & =\frac{\varepsilon \cdot \mathbf{y}\left(T_{0}\right)}{\varepsilon \cdot T_{0}}=\frac{\mathbf{y}\left(T_{0}\right)}{T_{0}} \simeq \frac{1}{T_{0}} \int_{0}^{T_{0}} X\left(x_{0}, \phi_{0}+\Omega\left(x_{0}\right) \cdot \tau\right) d \tau \\
& =X^{*}\left(x_{0} ; \phi_{0}, T_{0}\right) \simeq \bar{X}\left(x_{0}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Puisque $t_{0}^{\prime}-t_{0}=\varepsilon T_{0}>\varepsilon$ et que $x(t)-x\left(t_{0}\right)=\varepsilon \mathbf{y}(T) \simeq 0$ pour tout $t \in\left[t_{0}, t_{0}^{\prime}\right]$ (voir (B.14) ci après), on a montré qu'il existe $\mu=\varepsilon$ tel qu'à chaque fois que ( $t_{0}, x\left(t_{0}\right)$ ) est limité, il existe $t_{0}^{\prime} \in \mathbb{R}$ avec $t_{0}^{\prime}-t_{0}>\mu$, tel que la fonction $x$ vérifie la propriété stroboscopique. Du théorème B.3.2 découle alors le résultat du théorème B.3.1.

## Preuve du Lemme B.3.1

Soit $T \in \mathbb{R}, 0<T \leq T_{0}$.

- Considérons $\|\varphi(T)-\bar{\varphi}(T)\|$. On a

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|\varphi(T)-\bar{\varphi}(T)\| & \leq \int_{0}^{T}\left\|\frac{d \varphi}{d T}(s)-\frac{d \bar{\varphi}}{d T}(s)\right\| d s \\
& \leq \int_{0}^{T}\left\|\Omega\left(x_{0}+\varepsilon \mathbf{y}(s)\right)+\varepsilon \mathcal{O}(1)-\Omega\left(x_{0}\right)\right\| d s \\
& \leq \int_{0}^{T}\left\|\Omega\left(x_{0}+\varepsilon \mathbf{y}(s)\right)-\Omega\left(x_{0}\right)\right\| d s+\varepsilon \int_{0}^{T}\|\mathcal{O}(1)\| d s \\
& \leq L_{1} \int_{0}^{T}\|\varepsilon \mathbf{y}(s)\| d s+\varepsilon \int_{0}^{T}\|\mathcal{O}(1)\| d s
\end{aligned}
$$

où $L_{1}=\sup _{x \in \mathbf{B}}\left\|\frac{d \Omega}{d x}(x)\right\|$. Or, pour $T \in \mathbb{R}, 0 \leq T \leq T_{0}$, on a

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|\varepsilon \mathbf{y}(T)\|=\left\|x\left(t_{0}+\varepsilon T\right)-x\left(t_{0}\right)\right\| \leq \varepsilon T L_{0} \tag{B.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

où $L_{0}=\sup _{\mathbf{B} \times \mathrm{R}^{m}}\|X(x, \phi)\|$. Alors,

$$
\begin{align*}
\|\varphi(T)-\bar{\varphi}(T)\| & \leq L_{1} L_{0} \varepsilon \int_{0}^{T} s d s+\varepsilon T L_{2} \\
& \leq \varepsilon L_{1} L_{0} \frac{T^{2}}{2}+\varepsilon T L_{2}  \tag{B.15}\\
& \leq L_{1} L_{0} \frac{\left(\sqrt{\varepsilon} T_{0}\right)^{2}}{2}+\sqrt{\varepsilon}\left(\sqrt{\varepsilon} T_{0}\right) L_{2} \simeq 0
\end{align*}
$$

où $L_{2}$ est tel que $\sup _{\mathbf{B} \times \mathrm{R}^{m}}\|\mathcal{O}(1)\| \leq L_{2}$. Les $L_{i}$ étant tous limités dans $\mathbb{R}_{+}$. Ainsi $\|\varphi(T)-\bar{\varphi}(T)\| \simeq 0$ et donc $\varphi(T) \simeq \bar{\varphi}(T)=\Omega\left(x_{0}\right) \cdot T$.

- Pour $\left\|\frac{\mathbf{y}(T)}{T}-\frac{\overline{\mathbf{y}}(T)}{T}\right\|$, on a

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\frac{\mathbf{y}(T)}{T}-\frac{\overline{\mathbf{y}}(T)}{T}\right\| & \leq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T}\left\|\frac{d \mathbf{y}(s)}{d T}-\frac{d \overline{\mathbf{y}}(s)}{d T}\right\| d s \\
& \leq \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} \| X\left(x_{0}+\varepsilon \mathbf{y}(s), \phi_{0}+\varphi(s)\right)-X\left(x_{0}, \phi_{0}+\bar{\varphi}(s) \| d s\right. \\
& \leq L_{3} \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T}\|\varepsilon \mathbf{y}(s)\| d s+L_{4} \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T}\|\varphi(s)-\bar{\varphi}(s)\| d s \\
& \leq L_{3} L_{0} \varepsilon \frac{T}{2}+L_{4} \frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T}\left(L_{0} L_{1} \varepsilon \frac{s^{2}}{2}+\varepsilon s L_{2}\right) d s \quad \quad \quad(\operatorname{voir}(B .14) \text { et }(B .15)) \\
& \leq L_{3} L_{0} \varepsilon \frac{T}{2}+L_{4} L_{0} L_{1} \varepsilon \frac{T^{2}}{6}+L_{4} L_{2} \varepsilon \frac{T}{2} \\
& \leq L_{3} L_{0} \sqrt{\varepsilon} \frac{\sqrt{\varepsilon} T_{0}}{2}+L_{4} L_{0} L_{1} \frac{\left(\sqrt{\varepsilon} T_{0}\right)^{2}}{6}+L_{4} L_{2} \sqrt{\varepsilon} \frac{\sqrt{\varepsilon} T_{0}}{2} \simeq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

où $L_{3}=\sup _{\mathbf{B} \times \mathrm{R}^{m}}\left\|\frac{\partial X}{\partial x}(x, \phi)\right\|$ et $L_{4}=\sup _{\mathbf{B} \times \mathrm{R}^{m}}\left\|\frac{\partial X}{\partial \phi}(x, \phi)\right\|$, avec les $L_{i}$ limités dans $\mathbb{R}_{+}$.
Ainsi

$$
\left\|\frac{\mathbf{y}(T)}{T}-\frac{\overline{\mathbf{y}}(T)}{T}\right\| \simeq 0 \quad \text { et donc } \quad \frac{\mathbf{y}(T)}{T} \simeq \frac{\overline{\mathbf{y}}(T)}{T}=\frac{1}{T} \int_{0}^{T} X\left(x_{0}, \phi_{0}+\Omega\left(x_{0}\right) \cdot \tau\right) d \tau
$$

Ce qui termine la preuve du lemme B.3.1.

## B. 4 Bibliographie

[1] D. V. Anosov, Averaging in systems of ordinary differential equations with rapidly oscillating solutions, Izv. Akad. Nauk. SSR Ser. Math. 24 (1960), 721742.
[2] V. I. Arnold, "Mathematical methods of classical mechanics", Nauka, Moscow, 1974 (Traduc. Fr. Méthodes mathématiques de la mécanique classique, Mir, Moscou, 1976).
[3] V. I. Arnold, "Chapitres supplémentaires de la théorie des équations différentielles ordinaires", Mir, Moscou, 1980.
[4] V. I. Arnold, "Dynamical Systems III", Encycl. Math. Sciences. Vol. 3, Springer Verlag, Berlin, 1988.
[5] F. Diener and M. Diener (Eds.), "Nonstandard Analysis in Practice", Univesitext, Springer Verlag, Berlin, 1995.
[6] F. Diener et G. Reeb, "Analyse Non Standard". Hermann, 1989.
[7] M. Diener, Une initiation aux outils non standard fondamentaux in"Analyse non standard et représentation du réel, Oran-Les Andalouses, 8-12 septembre 1984", (M. Diener et C. Lobry, Eds), 11-71, OPU (Alger), CNRS (Paris), 1985.
[8] T. Kasuka, On the adiabatic theorem for Hamiltonian systems of differential equations in classical mechanics I, II, III, Proc. Japan, Acad. 37 (1961), 366371, 372-376, 377-382.
[9] P. Lochak and C. Meunier, "Multiphase averaging for classical systems", Appl. Math. Sciences. 72, Springer Verlag, Berlin, 1988.
[10] A. I. Neishtadt, Passage through resonance in a two-frequency problem, Dokl. Akad. 221, (1975), 301-304 (Engl. Transl. Sov. Phys. Dokl. 20, (1975), 189-191).
[11] A. I. Neishtadt, On averaging in systems with several frequencies II, Dokl. Akad. 226, (1976), 1295-1298 (Engl. Transl. Sov. Phys. Dokl. 21, (1976), 80-82).
[12] T. SARI, Moyennisation dans les systèmes différentiels à solutions rapidement oscillantes, Thèse de Doctorat, Université de Mulhouse, 1983.
[13] T. Sari, Stroboscopy and averaging, in "Colloque Trajectorien à la mémoire de G. Reeb et J. L. Callot, Strasbourg-Obernai, 12-16 juin 1995", (A. Fruchard et A. Troech, Eds), 95-124. Prépublication de l'IRMA, Strasbourg, 1995.

## Appendix C

## On the validity of the averaging method for all time

By Mustapha LAKRIB ${ }^{1}$


#### Abstract

We present the $k$-th order averaging theory for periodic systems. Then we shown how to obtain $\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k}\right)$-approximations to the solutions of the differential equation $\dot{x}=\varepsilon f(t, x)$ in such a way that they are uniformly valid for all time under the condition that the first order averaged equation has an exponentially attracting rest point.


(1991) A.M.S Subject Classification Codes. 34C29, 34H10.

Keywords and Phrases. Averaging, nonlinear oscillations, perturbations.

## C. 1 Introduction

As is well-known, many perturbation problems in nonlinear oscillations, and some in celestial mechanics, can be put into the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}=\varepsilon f(t, x) \tag{C.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\varepsilon>0$ is a small parameter, $t \in \mathbb{R}_{+}, x \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$ and $f$ is periodic in $t$ (with period $2 \pi$, for convenience). Approximate solutions of (C.1) can be constructed using the method of averaging which gives asymptotic estimates by comparing the solutions of (C.1) with those of a derived $k$-th order averaged equation, where $k$ is a chosen integer. Since the publication of the now classic book by Bogoliubov and Mitropolosky [2] the literature on averaging has grown immensely. The interested reader is referred to [12] for more details and bibliographical information. The aim of this work is to show how to obtain $\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k}\right)$-approximations to the solutions of (C.1)

[^1]by the $k$-th order averaging method in such a way that they are uniformly valid for all time. The results are as follows. The $k$-th order averaging approximation is normally valid for a time-scale $\mathcal{O}(1 / \varepsilon)[3,4,7,9]$, but becomes valid for all (future) time, in the Sanchez-Palencia case $[5,10,11,12]$.

The organization of this paper is as follows. Some preliminaries are collected in Section C.2. In Section C. 3 we give exposition of the $k$-th order averaging method, and Section C. 4 treats the Sanchez-Palencia case; that is, the case where the first order averaged equation admits an exponentially attracting rest point.

## C. 2 Preliminaries

In this section we collect some definitions and lemmas in the form that will be used later.

We assume that all functions are smooth (infinitely differentiable). Let $f$ : $\mathbb{R}^{n} \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be such a function, and let $D^{m} f(x)$ denote the $m$-th derivative of $f$ at $x \in \mathbb{R}^{n} . D^{m} f(x)$ is a $m$-multilinear map on $\mathbb{R}^{n}$ for each $x \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$. For $\xi_{i} \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$, $i=1, \ldots, m$, and $x \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$, the value of $D^{m} f(x)$ at $\left(\xi_{1}, \ldots, \xi_{m}\right)$ is given by

$$
D^{m} f(x) \xi_{1} \cdots \xi_{m}=\sum \frac{\partial^{m} f(x)}{\partial x^{\left(j_{1}\right)} \cdots \partial x^{\left(j_{m}\right)}} \xi_{1}^{\left(j_{1}\right)} \cdots \xi_{m}^{\left(j_{m}\right)} \in \mathbb{R}^{n}
$$

the summation ranging over $j_{1}, \ldots, j_{m}=1, \ldots, n$. By definition $D^{0} f(x)=f(x)$. For $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^{n}, \xi^{(j)}$ denotes the $j$-th component of $\xi$ while $\xi^{m}$ is an abbreviation for $\xi \cdots \xi$ ( $m$ times).

In this notation, Taylor's formula [4, 9] for a smooth function $f$ and $x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$, can be written in the form

$$
f(x)=f\left(x_{0}\right)+\cdots+\frac{1}{(m-1)!} D^{m-1} f\left(x_{0}\right) h^{m-1}+\rho\left(x_{0}\right)
$$

where

$$
\rho\left(x_{0}\right)=\frac{1}{(m-1)!} \int_{0}^{1}(1-y)^{m-1} D^{m} f\left(x_{0}+y h\right) h^{m} d y
$$

with $h=x-x_{0}$ and $x \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$.
In this paper $f(t, x)$ denotes a mapping of $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{n} \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$, and $D_{x}^{m} f(t, x)$ is used to denote the $m$-th partial derivative of $f$ with respect to $x$ at $(t, x) \in$ $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{n}$. The above formulas holds with $f(x)$ and $D^{m} f(x)$ replaced by $f(t, x)$ and $D_{x}^{m} f(t, x)$ respectively. If $f$ is $2 \pi$-periodic in $t$, its mean value with respect to $t$ will be designated as $f^{o}$ and is defined, for each $x \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$, by

$$
f^{o}(x)=\frac{1}{2 \pi} \int_{0}^{2 \pi} f(t, x) d t
$$

The oscillating part $f-f^{o}$ of $f$ will be denoted by $\tilde{f}$.
The Besjes inequality is used to estimate various functions on expanding intervals of time with lengh $\mathcal{O}(1 / \varepsilon)$. The version bellow differs from the original proof given in [1] and [4], in some details, uses much stronger hypotheses, and may be easily proved by the method used in [8].

Lemma C.2.1 Let $g(t, z)$ be a smooth function with values in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$, defined for $t \in \mathbb{R}$ and $z \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$, which is $2 \pi$-periodic in $t$ with zero mean, i.e., $g^{o} \equiv 0$. Suppose that $y(t)$ is a smooth function which is defined and remains bounded for $t$ in an interval $I(\varepsilon)=[0, b(\varepsilon)]$ for some positive function $b(\varepsilon)$, and is slowly varying in the sense that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\frac{d y}{d t}(t)\right\| \leq c \varepsilon . \tag{C.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then there exist constants $M$ and $N$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\int_{0}^{t} g(s, y(s)) d s\right\| \leq M+N \varepsilon t \tag{C.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $t \in I(\varepsilon)$.

Remark 2 We will refer to the integrand of (C.3) as a mean-free periodic function with slow input. Notice that (C.2) guarantees that the "input" $y$ will remain bounded for at least on a time-scale $\mathcal{O}(1 / \varepsilon)$, so we could always take $I(\varepsilon)$ to be of this order. However, the theorem remains valid for longer than this if $y$ remain bounded for longer.

We formulate the familiar Gronwall inequality in a slightly different form which make it adapted to our study.

Lemma C.2.2 Suppose that for $t \in[0, L / \varepsilon]$

$$
\psi(t) \leq \varepsilon c_{1} \int_{0}^{t} \psi(s) d s+c_{2} \varepsilon^{k}
$$

with $\psi(t)$ a continuous function, $\psi(t) \geq 0$ for $t \in[0, L / \varepsilon], \psi(0)=0$ and $c_{1}, c_{2}$ some constants. Then there exists a constant $c>0$ such that

$$
\psi(t) \leq c \varepsilon^{k}
$$

for $t \in[0, L / \varepsilon]$.

## C. 3 The k-th order averaging expansion

Here we presente a treatment of the $k$-th order averaging theory for periodic systems of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}=\varepsilon f(t, x), \quad x(0)=\alpha \tag{C.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $f$ is $2 \pi$-periodic in $t$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$. The $k$-th order approximation to the solution of (C.4) by the method of averaging is formally defined for $k \geq 1$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{k}(t)=\hat{x}_{k}(t)+\sum_{i=1}^{k-1} \varepsilon^{i} u_{i}\left(t, \hat{x}_{k}(t)\right) \tag{C.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\hat{x}_{k}(t)$ is the solution of the autonomous system

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\hat{x}}=\varepsilon h_{1}^{o}(\hat{x})+\cdots+\varepsilon^{k} h_{k}^{o}(\hat{x}), \quad \hat{x}(0)=\alpha \tag{C.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

We will suppose $\hat{x}_{k}$ to be defined and bounded in intervals of time with lengh $\mathcal{O}(1 / \varepsilon)$. The functions $h_{i}^{o}$ and $u_{i}$ are defined by a recursive process which may be described as follows.

Begining with

$$
h_{1}(t, y)=f(t, y),
$$

we may construct recursively, for $i=1, \ldots, k$, the sequence of functions $h_{1}, u_{1}, h_{2}$, $u_{2}, \ldots, h_{k}, u_{k}$, defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial u_{i}}{\partial t}(t, y)=\tilde{h}_{i}(t, y), \quad u_{i}^{o}(y)=v_{i}(y) \tag{C.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{i}(t, y)=\sum_{j=1}^{i-1}\left[\frac{1}{j!} D_{x}^{j} f(t, y) \sum_{i_{1}+\cdots+i_{j}=i-1} u_{i_{1}} \cdots u_{i_{j}}(t, y)-D_{x} u_{j}(t, y) h_{i-j}^{o}(y)\right] . \tag{C.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $h_{i}^{o}, u_{i}^{o}$ are mean values with respect to $t$ of $h_{i}$ and $u_{i}$ respectively, and $\tilde{h}_{i}$ is the oscillating part of $h_{i}$. These equations are obtained by substituting the expressions (C.5) and (C.6) into the differential equation (C.4), expanding the function $f(t, y)$ in a Taylor series about the point $x=\hat{x}_{k}$ and equating the coefficients of like powers of $\varepsilon$, the $v_{i}$ being chosen to make the functions $u_{i} 2 \pi$-periodic in $t$ with $u_{i}(0, y)=0$ for all $y$. The reason for the name $k$-th order averaging is now apparent since the $k$ $h_{i}^{o}$ 's are determined by a time average.

It remains to establish the error of the approximation. Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{k}(t)=x(t)-x_{k}(t) \tag{C.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $x(t)$ is the exact solution of (C.4). We will show that $R_{k}=\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k}\right)$ on a time-scale $\mathcal{O}(1 / \varepsilon)$.

Theorem C.3.1 There exist positive constants $c, L$ and $\varepsilon_{0}$ such that

$$
\left\|R_{k}(t)\right\| \leq c \varepsilon^{k}
$$

for $t \in[0, L / \varepsilon]$ and $\varepsilon \in\left[0, \varepsilon_{0}\right]$.
Proof. From (C.4), (C.5), (C.6), (C.7) and (C.8), computations lead to

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d R_{k}}{d t} & =\frac{d x}{d t}-\frac{d x_{k}}{d t}  \tag{C.10}\\
& =\varepsilon\left[f(t, x(t))-f\left(t, x_{k}(t)\right)\right]+\varepsilon^{k} g_{k}\left(t, \hat{x}_{k}(t)\right)+\varepsilon^{k+1} l_{k}\left(t, \hat{x}_{k}(t)\right)
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{gathered}
g_{k}\left(t, \hat{x}_{k}\right)=-\tilde{h}_{k}\left(t, \hat{x}_{k}\right), \\
l_{k}\left(t, \hat{x}_{k}\right)=\sum_{i=0}^{k-2} \varepsilon^{i} \sum_{l=i+1}^{k-1} D_{x} u_{l}\left(t, \hat{x}_{k}\right) h_{k+1+i-l}^{o}\left(\hat{x}_{k}\right)-\sum_{i=1}^{k} \rho_{i}\left(t, \hat{x}_{k}\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

and $\rho_{i}\left(t, \hat{x}_{k}\right)$ is the remainder obtained by expanding $f\left(t, x_{k}\right)$ about the point $\hat{x}_{k}$. The estimate $l_{k}\left(t, \hat{x}_{k}\right)=\mathcal{O}(1)$ holds as long as $\hat{x}_{k}$ remain in compact subsets; but we know from the hypothesis under $\hat{x}_{k}$ that this is so on a time-scale $\mathcal{O}(1 / \varepsilon)$, and therefore the estimate holds on this interval. Integrate (C.10) and take the norm lead to

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|R_{k}(t)\right\| & =\left\|x(t)-x_{k}(t)\right\| \\
& \leq \varepsilon \int_{0}^{t}\left\|f(s, x(s))-f\left(s, x_{k}(s)\right)\right\| d s+\varepsilon^{k}\left\|\int_{0}^{t} g_{k}\left(s, \hat{x}_{k}(s)\right) d s\right\|+\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $g_{k}$ is a mean-free periodic function with slow input, the Besjes inequality (Lemma C.2.1) applies, and the norm of this integral is bounded by some $M+N \varepsilon t \leq$ $B_{0}$ on a time-scale $\mathcal{O}(1 / \varepsilon)$. The term $\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k}\right)$ is bounded by some $\varepsilon^{k} B_{1}$, on the same interval, and the first term can be bounded using a Lipschitz constant. Therefore

$$
\left\|R_{k}(t)\right\| \leq \varepsilon L \int_{0}^{t}\left\|R_{k}(s)\right\| d s+B \varepsilon^{k}
$$

and the proof is concluded with Gronwall's inequality (Lemma C.2.2).

## C. 4 The k-th order averaging expansion in the contracting case

In this section we will show that the averaging method can be extended beyond time intervals with lengh $\mathcal{O}(1 / \varepsilon)$. This is true under the Sanchez-Palencia condition. The approximation is then uniformly valid for $t \geq 0$. First, we state this condition and
show that it is equivalent to certain contraction hypothesis on the linear variational equation. Then we prove validity of the averaging method for all (future) time under this hypothesis.

Let $\hat{x}_{1}(\tau)$ be a solution (with $\tau=\varepsilon t$ ), of

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d \hat{x}_{1}}{d \tau}=f^{o}\left(\hat{x}_{1}\right), \quad \hat{x}_{1}(0)=\alpha \tag{C.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Suppose that $f^{o}(0)=0$ and that the matrix $A=f_{x}^{o}(0)$ has its eigenvalues in the left half-plane, so that $x=0$ is an asymptotically stable rest point (if this statement holds for $x=x_{c}$ with $f^{o}\left(x_{c}\right)=0$, we translate this rest point to the origin). Suppose furthermore that $\alpha$ lies in the basin of attraction of $x=0$, so that $\hat{x}_{1}(\tau) \rightarrow 0$ as $\tau \rightarrow+\infty$. These hypotheses are the conditions of the Sanchez-Palencia theorem.

We now express these hypotheses in an alternate form. Consider the linear variational equation of (C.11) along its solution, namely

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d z}{d \tau}=f_{x}^{o}\left(\hat{x}_{1}(\tau)\right) z=A(\tau) z \tag{C.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

If the Sanchez-Palencia condition holds, then the matrix $A(\tau)$ in (C.12) satisfies $A(\tau) \rightarrow A$ as $\tau \rightarrow+\infty$, and as (see [6]) the matrix $A$ has eigenvalues with all real parts negative, there exist constants $a>0$ and $b>0$ such that the fundamental matrix solution $\Phi(\tau)$ of (C.12) satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\Phi\left(\tau_{2}\right) \Phi^{-1}\left(\tau_{1}\right)\right\| \leq a e^{-b\left(\tau_{2}-\tau_{1}\right)} \tag{C.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $0 \leq \tau_{1} \leq \tau_{2}$; in other words, the trivial solution $z=0$ of (C.12) is exponentially asymptotically stable. Conversely, (C.13) implies that the Sanchez-Palencia condition holds. To see this, note that $z=d \hat{x}_{1} / d \tau$ is a solution of (C.12), and therefore

$$
\frac{d \hat{x}_{1}}{d \tau}=\Phi(\tau) \Phi^{-1}(0) \frac{d \hat{x}_{1}}{d \tau}(0)
$$

Integrating and using (C.13) gives

$$
\left\|\hat{x}_{1}\left(\tau_{2}\right)-\hat{x}_{1}\left(\tau_{1}\right)\right\| \leq \frac{a}{b}\left(e^{-b \tau_{1}}-e^{-b \tau_{2}}\right)
$$

From this and the Cauchy criterion, it follows that $\hat{x}_{1}(\tau)$ approches an exponentially asymptotically stable rest point of (C.11).

Now we will prove that under hypothesis (C.13), the $k$-th order averaging is valid for all time. We rewrite the differential equation (C.10) satisfied by the remainder in a way which exhibits it as a perturbation of (C.12), and use (C.13) as an aid in estimating the solution via the Besjes inequality.

Theorem C.4.1 Let $x_{k}(t)$ be the $k$-th order approximation of the solution of (C.4) by the method of averaging, defined by (C.5), and let $R_{k}(t)$ be its error, given by
(C.9). Assume that the contracting hypothesis (C.13) is satisfied. Then there exist positive constants $c$ and $\varepsilon_{0}$ such that

$$
\left\|R_{k}(t)\right\| \leq c \varepsilon^{k}
$$

for $t \geq 0$ and $\varepsilon \in\left[0, \varepsilon_{0}\right]$.
Proof. We take up again the differential equation (C.10) satisfied by $R_{k}$. If we adopt the expedient of writing $\mathcal{O}\left(\tilde{\varepsilon}^{j}\right)$ for a term which is $\varepsilon^{j}$ times a mean-free function with slow input, (C.10) can be written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d R_{k}}{d t}=\varepsilon\left[f(t, x(t))-f\left(t, x_{k}(t)\right)\right]+\mathcal{O}\left(\tilde{\varepsilon}^{k}\right)+\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k+1}\right) \tag{C.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the discussion after (C.10) it was pointed out that the $\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k+1}\right)$ estimate holds as long as $\hat{x}_{k}$ remain bounded. In the general case of section 3 this remains bounded on a time-scale $\mathcal{O}(1 / \varepsilon)$. Here we will suppose that $\hat{x}_{k}$ remains bounded for all $t \geq 0$. Therefore (C.14) holds for $t \geq 0$.

Next we use induction on $k$ to show that $R_{k}=\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k}\right)$ for $t \geq 0$. For $k=1$, it is simplest to work directly from the definition of $R_{1}$ rather than from (C.14), although the same conclusions follow either way. Differentiating $R_{1}=x-x_{1}=x-\hat{x}_{1}$ gives

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d R_{1}}{d t} & =\varepsilon f(t, x)-\varepsilon f^{o}\left(\hat{x}_{1}\right) \\
& =\varepsilon\left[f^{o}(x)-f^{o}\left(\hat{x}_{1}\right)\right]+\varepsilon \tilde{f}(t, x) \\
& =\varepsilon\left[f^{o}\left(\hat{x}_{1}+R_{1}\right)-f^{o}\left(\hat{x}_{1}\right)\right]+\varepsilon \tilde{f}(t, x)  \tag{C.15}\\
& =\varepsilon f_{x}^{o}\left(\hat{x}_{1}\right) R_{1}+\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon\left\|R_{1}\right\|^{2}\right)+\mathcal{O}(\tilde{\varepsilon}) \\
& =\varepsilon A(\varepsilon t) R_{1}+\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon\left\|R_{1}\right\|^{2}\right)+\mathcal{O}(\tilde{\varepsilon}) .
\end{align*}
$$

Here we have expanded $f^{o}$ in a Taylor expansion in $R_{1}$, and identified $\tilde{f}(t, x(t))$ as a mean-free function with a slow input. For the solution $R_{1}$ of (C.15), we may write the integral equation

$$
R_{1}(t)=\int_{0}^{t} \Phi(\varepsilon t) \Phi^{-1}(\varepsilon s)\left[O\left(\varepsilon\left\|R_{1}\right\|^{2}\right)+O(\tilde{\varepsilon})\right] d s
$$

Using $c$ as the constant to defining the first "big-oh" estimate, restoring the function $\tilde{f}$ in the second, and using (C.13) we have

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\|R_{1}(t)\right\| \leq & c \varepsilon \int_{0}^{t} a e^{-\varepsilon b(t-s)}\left\|R_{1}(s)\right\|^{2} d s \\
& +\varepsilon\|\Phi(\varepsilon t)\| \cdot\left\|\int_{0}^{t} \Phi^{-1}(\varepsilon s) \tilde{f}(s, x(s)) d s\right\| \tag{C.16}
\end{align*}
$$

The function $g\left(t, z_{0}, z_{1}\right)=\Phi^{-1}\left(z_{0}\right) \tilde{f}\left(t, z_{1}\right)$ is mean-free in $t$ for fixed $z_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$ and $z_{1} \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$. Therefore the Besjes lemma (Lemma C.2.1) applies, and using (C.13) again (with $\tau_{2}=\varepsilon t$ and $\tau_{1}=0$ ), the last term of (C.16) is bounded by $\varepsilon a e^{-\varepsilon b t}(M+N \varepsilon t)$ for some $M$ and $N$, which is $\mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$ for all time. (Its maximum is $\left.\varepsilon(a N / b e) e^{b M / N}\right)$. Let $\delta(t)$ denote the maximum of $\left\|R_{1}(t)\right\|$ for $s \in[0, t]$. Then (C.16) and these calculations imply that for some $\beta$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta(t) \leq c \varepsilon \int_{0}^{t} a e^{-\varepsilon b(t-s)} \delta^{2}(s) d s+\beta \varepsilon \tag{C.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all $t \geq 0$.
We will show that (C.17) implies $\delta(t)=\mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$ for $t \geq 0$, which will complete proof of the theorem in the leading order case $k=1$. Since $\delta(0)=0$, there exists an initial interval $I(\varepsilon)$ of time for which $\delta(t)<\sqrt{\varepsilon}$, that is, $\delta^{2}(t)<\varepsilon$. Using this on the right hand side of (C.17) and evaluating the integral, we find a constant $K$ such that $\delta(t)<K \varepsilon$ for $t \in I(\varepsilon)$; that is, $\delta<K \varepsilon$ for as long as $\delta<\sqrt{\varepsilon}$, or in other words, $\delta$ must exceed $\sqrt{\varepsilon}$ before it can exceed $K \varepsilon$. Choosing $\varepsilon_{0}<1 / K^{2}$ guarantees that for $\varepsilon \in\left[0, \varepsilon_{0}\right], K \varepsilon<\sqrt{\varepsilon}$, so that escape beyond $K \varepsilon$ is impossible, and that the proof is finished.

Now we turn to the inductive step. Assuming that $R_{k-1}=\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k-1}\right)$ it follows (by elementary calculus) that $R_{k}=\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k-1}\right)$; we wish to show that $R_{k}=\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k}\right)$. We can write

$$
R_{k}=\varepsilon^{k-1} S
$$

with $S(t)=\mathcal{O}(1)$ for $t \geq 0$, and we wish to show that $S=\mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$. From (C.14), after separating $f$ into mean and mean-free parts, we have

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d R_{k}}{d t} & =\varepsilon^{k-1} \frac{d S}{d t}  \tag{C.18}\\
& =\varepsilon\left[f^{o}(x)-f^{o}\left(x_{k}\right)\right]+\varepsilon\left[\tilde{f}(t, x)-\tilde{f}\left(t, x_{k}\right)\right]+\mathcal{O}\left(\tilde{\varepsilon}^{k}\right)+\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k+1}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

The terms in $\tilde{f}$ are mean-free functions with slow inputs $x$ and $x_{k}$, respectively. Also, using a Lipschitz constant for $\tilde{f}$ we see (from the induction hypothesis and the initial factor $\varepsilon$ ) that the expression is actually of order $\varepsilon^{k}$; therefore it can be assimilated to the term $\mathcal{O}\left(\tilde{\varepsilon}^{k}\right)$. On the other hand, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\varepsilon\left[f^{o}(x)-f^{o}\left(x_{k}\right)\right] & =\varepsilon\left[f^{o}\left(x_{k}+\varepsilon^{k-1} S\right)-f^{o}\left(x_{k}\right)\right] \\
& =\varepsilon^{k} f_{x}^{o}\left(x_{k}\right) S+\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon\left(\varepsilon^{k-1}\|S\|\right)^{2}\right) \\
& =\varepsilon^{k} f_{x}^{o}\left(x_{k}\right) S+\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k+1}\right) \\
& =\varepsilon^{k} f_{x}^{o}\left(\hat{x}_{1}\right) S+\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k+1}\right) \\
& =\varepsilon^{k} A(\varepsilon t) S+\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{k+1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Here we have firstly expanded $f^{o}$ in a Taylor expansion in $\varepsilon^{k-1} S$, (higher order terms in $S$ have been pushed to order at least $\varepsilon^{k+1}$, and these terms are uniformly of that order for $t \geq 0$, because $S$ is known, by the inductive hypothesis, to be bounded). As $\hat{x}_{k}=\hat{x}_{1}+\mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$, we have $x_{k}=\hat{x}_{1}+\mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$, and then we have secondly expanded $f_{x}^{o}$ in a Taylor expansion in $\mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$. Now (C.18) becomes

$$
\frac{d S}{d t}=\varepsilon A(\varepsilon t) S+\mathcal{O}(\tilde{\varepsilon})+\mathcal{O}\left(\varepsilon^{2}\right)
$$

Expressing it as an integral equation, taking norms, and using the Besjes inequality on the $\mathcal{O}(\tilde{\varepsilon})$ term, immediatly shows that $S=\mathcal{O}(\varepsilon)$.

## C. 5 Bibliography

[1] J. G. Besjes, On the asymptotic method for nonlinear differential equations, J. Mécanique, 8 (1969), 357-372.
[2] N. N. Bogoliubov and Y. A. Mitropolsky, "Asymptotic Methods in the Theory of Nonlinear Oscillations," Gordon \& Breach, New York, 1961.
[3] W. Eckhaus, New approch to the asymptotic Method in the Theory of Nonlinear oscillations and wave-propagation, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 49 (1975), 575-611.
[4] J. A. Ellison, A. W. Saenz and H. S. Dumas, Improved Nth order averaging theory for periodic systems, J. Diff. Eq., 84 (1990), 383-403.
[5] J. Guckenheimer and Ph. Holmes, "Nonlinear Oscillations, Dynamical Systems, and Bifurcations of Vector Fields," Springer Verlag, New York, 1983.
[6] J. K. Hale, "Ordinary Differential Equations," Wiley, New York, 1969.
[7] J. Murdock, Qualitative Theory of Nonlinear Resonance by Averaging and Dynamical Systems Methods, Dynamics Reported, Vol. 1 (1988), 91-172.
[8] J. Murdock, "Perturbations: Theory and Methods," Wiley, New York, 1991.
[9] L. M. Perko, Higher Order Averaging and Related Methods for Perturbed Periodic and Quasi-periodic Systems, SIAM J. Appl. Math., 17 (1969), 698-724.
[10] E. Sanchez-Palencia, Méthode de centrage et comportement des trajectoires dans l'espace des phases, C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris, T. 280, Série A (1975), 105107.
[11] J. A. Sanders, Asymptotic Approximations and Extension of Time-scales, SIAM J. Math. Anal., 11 (1980), 758-770.
[12] J. A. Sanders and F. Verhulst, "Averaging methods in Nonlinear Dynamical Systems," Appl. Math. Sciences 59, New York, Springer Verlag, 1985.

## Appendix D

## On solutions of linear difference equations with infinite delay

By Mustapha LAKRIB ${ }^{1}$


#### Abstract

The difference equation with infinite delay $(D E)_{\varepsilon} x_{n+1}=A x_{n}+$ $\varepsilon \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n} R_{n-k} x_{k}$ is considered. Sufficient conditions for the existence of a unique solution are proved. An $O(\varepsilon)$-approximation of this solution for $-N \leq$ $n \leq N, N>0$, by the solution of the equation $(D E)_{0}$ is obtained.


(1991) A.M.S Subject Classification Codes. 45D, 34C

Keywords and Phrases. Difference equation, Infinite delay, Approximation

## D. 1 Introduction

In [1], Ryabov considers a problem concerning the existence of so-called two-sided solutions of linear integrodifferential equations of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x}{d t}=A x+\varepsilon \int_{-\infty}^{t} R(t-s) x(s) d s \tag{D.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\varepsilon$ is a positive small parameter, $t \in \mathbb{R}, x \in \mathbb{R}^{m}, A$ is a constant $m \times m$ matrix and $R$ is a matrix of continuous functions satisfying the inequality

$$
\|R(t)\| \leq c \frac{e^{-\gamma t}}{t^{1-\alpha}}
$$

where $c, \gamma, \alpha$ are positive constants and $0<\alpha<1$. It is proven there that if $\min \left\{\mathcal{R} e\left(\lambda_{i}\right): 1 \leq i \leq m\right\}>-\gamma$, where $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{m}$ are eigenvalues of $A$, then there is an $\varepsilon_{0}>0$ such that for any $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right]$ and any $x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ the equation (D.1) has

[^2]a unique solution $x_{\varepsilon}$ (so-called two-sided solution) defined on the entire axis $t$ for every given initial condition $x_{\varepsilon}(0)=x_{0}$ and satisfying $\lim _{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0}\left\|x_{\varepsilon}-x\right\|_{L}=0$ for any $L>0$, where $\left\|x_{\varepsilon}-x\right\|_{L}=\sup \left\{\left\|x_{\varepsilon}(t)-x(t)\right\|:-L \leq t \leq L\right\}, x(t)=e^{A t} x_{0}$.

The equation (D.1) has the discretization

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{n+1}=A x_{n}+\varepsilon\left(R_{0} x_{n}+R_{1} x_{n-1}+\cdots+R_{k} x_{n-k}+\cdots\right), \tag{D.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is a difference equation with infinite delay. Our purpose in this work is to study (D.2) in a Banach space $E$, with $A, R_{k} \in \mathcal{L}(E)$, the space of continuous linear mappings from $E$ into $E(k=0,1, \ldots), A$ is invertible and $A^{-1} \in \mathcal{L}(E)$. Under sufficient conditions, we shall prove the existence of solutions of (D.2) determined uniquely by the initial value and defined for all integers. These solutions are approximated, to order $\varepsilon$, by those one of the equation obtained from (D.2) for $\varepsilon=0$. This is performed in Section D. 2 below.

## D. 2 Main results

The existence, uniqueness and approximation results are stated in the following theorem.

Theorem D.2.1 Suppose that the following conditions are satisfied

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|A^{-1}\right\|<1, \quad\left\|R_{0}\right\| \leq 1, \quad\left\|R_{n}\right\| \leq \frac{\gamma^{-n}}{n^{1-\alpha}}, \quad n=1,2, \ldots \tag{D.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\gamma, \alpha$ are constants, $e \leq \gamma, 0<\alpha<1$.
Then there exist a positive constant $\varepsilon_{0}$ and a unique operator $B \in \mathcal{L}(E)$, such that, for any $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right]$ and any $x_{0} \in E$, the sequence $x=\left\{x_{n}(\varepsilon)\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty}=\{(A+$ $\left.\varepsilon B)^{n} x_{0}\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty}$ is the unique solution of (D.2) satisfying the condition $x_{0}(\varepsilon)=x_{0}$ with $x \in F:=\left\{y=\left\{y_{n}\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}: y_{n} \in E, \sup \left\{\left|y_{n}\right|:-\infty<n \leq 0\right\}<\infty\right\}$, where $|$.$| is the$ norm on $E$. Moreover, for any positive integer $N$, there exists a positive constant $C$ (depending on $\varepsilon_{0}, x_{0}$ and $N$ ) such that $\sup \left\{\left|x_{n}(\varepsilon)-A^{n} x_{0}\right|:-N \leq n \leq N\right\} \leq C \varepsilon$.

Proof. Let us seek the solution of (D.2) in the form $x=\left\{x_{n}(\varepsilon)\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty}=\{(A+$ $\left.\varepsilon B)^{n} x_{0}\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty}$, where $B \in \mathcal{L}(E)$ is such that $A B=B A$ and $A+\varepsilon B$ is invertible. The matrix $B$ satisfy the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
B=P_{\varepsilon}(B):=R_{0}+R_{1}(A+\varepsilon B)^{-1}+\cdots+R_{k}(A+\varepsilon B)^{-k}+\cdots . \tag{D.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider the mapping $P_{\varepsilon}: \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{L}(E)$, defined by (D.4), where $\mathcal{D}=\{B \in \mathcal{L}(E)$ : $A B=B A$ and $\|B\| \leq 1\},\|B\|:=\sup \{|B x|:|x| \leq 1\}$. If $B_{1}, B_{2} \in \mathcal{D}$ then

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left\|P_{\varepsilon}\left(B_{1}\right)-P_{\varepsilon}\left(B_{2}\right)\right\| \\
=\| R_{1}\left[\left(A+\varepsilon B_{1}\right)^{-1}-\left(A+\varepsilon B_{2}\right)^{-1}\right]+R_{2}\left[\left(A+\varepsilon B_{1}\right)^{-2}\right. \\
\left.-\left(A+\varepsilon B_{2}\right)^{-2}\right]+\cdots+R_{k}\left[\left(A+\varepsilon B_{1}\right)^{-k}-\left(A+\varepsilon B_{2}\right)^{-k}\right]+\cdots \| .
\end{gathered}
$$

Since $\left(A+\varepsilon B_{i}\right)=A\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{i}\right)$ and $A B_{i}=B_{i} A, i=1,2$ where $I$ is the unit matrix, we have

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left\|P_{\varepsilon}\left(B_{1}\right)-P_{\varepsilon}\left(B_{2}\right)\right\| \\
\leq\left\|R_{1}\right\|\left\|A^{-1}\right\|\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-1}-\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-1}\right\| \\
+\left\|R_{2}\right\|\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{2}\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-2}-\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-2}\right\|+\cdots  \tag{D.5}\\
+\left\|R_{k}\right\|\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{k}\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-k}-\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-k}\right\|+\cdots .
\end{gather*}
$$

We have the following estimate

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-k}-\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-k}\right\| \\
=\left\|\left[\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-1}\right]^{k}-\left[\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-1}\right]^{k}\right\| \\
\left.\leq\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-1}-\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-1}\right\| \|\left[\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-1}\right]^{k-1}\right]^{-1} \\
+\left[\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-1}\right]^{k-2}\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-1}+\cdots+\left[\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-1}\right]^{k-1} \| \\
\leq\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-1}-\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-1}\right\|\left\{\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-1}\right\|^{k-1}\right. \\
\left.+\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-1}\right\|^{k-2}\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-1}\right\|+\cdots+\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-1}\right\|^{k-1}\right\} .
\end{gathered}
$$

As for $B_{1}, B_{2} \in \mathcal{D}$ and $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{1}\right]$, where $\varepsilon_{1}<1 /\left\|A^{-1}\right\|$, we have

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{i}\right)^{-1}\right\| \\
=\left\|I-\varepsilon\left(A^{-1} B_{i}\right)+\varepsilon^{2}\left(A^{-1} B_{i}\right)^{2}-\cdots\right\| \\
\leq 1+\varepsilon\left\|A^{-1}\right\|+\varepsilon^{2}\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{2}+\cdots \\
=\frac{1}{1-\varepsilon\left\|A^{-1}\right\|},
\end{gathered}
$$

we obtain the inegality

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-k}-\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-k}\right\|  \tag{D.6}\\
\leq\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-1}-\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-1}\right\| \frac{k}{\left(1-\varepsilon\left\|A^{-1}\right\|\right)^{k-1}} .
\end{gather*}
$$

Thus, for all $B_{1}, B_{2} \in \mathcal{D}$ and $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{1}\right]$, from (D.5) we obtain the estimate

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left\|P_{\varepsilon}\left(B_{1}\right)-P_{\varepsilon}\left(B_{2}\right)\right\| \\
\leq\left\{\left\|R_{1}\right\|\left\|A^{-1}\right\|+\left\|R_{2}\right\|\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{2} \frac{2}{1-\varepsilon\left\|A^{-1}\right\|}+\cdots\right. \\
\left.+\left\|R_{k}\right\|\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{k} \frac{k}{\left(1-\varepsilon\left\|A^{-1}\right\|\right)^{k-1}}+\cdots\right\}\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-1}-\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-1}\right\|  \tag{D.7}\\
\leq S_{1}\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-1}-\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-1}\right\|
\end{gather*}
$$

where $S_{1}=\left(1-\varepsilon\left\|A^{-1}\right\|\right) \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k\left\|R_{k}\right\| \frac{\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{k}}{\left(1-\varepsilon\left\|A^{-1}\right\|\right)^{k}}$. As $\left\|A^{-1}\right\|<\gamma$ then $\gamma^{-1}<$
$1 /\left\|A^{-1}\right\|$. Choose $\varepsilon_{2}$ sufficiently small such that $\gamma^{-1}+\varepsilon<1 /\left\|A^{-1}\right\|$ for $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{2}\right]$.
We obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\gamma^{-1}\left\|A^{-1}\right\|}{1-\varepsilon\left\|A^{-1}\right\|}<1 \quad \text { for } \varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{2}\right] \tag{D.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

The conditions (D.3) and (D.8) insure the convergence of the series $S_{1}$.
The following estimate is needed

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{-1}-\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{-1}\right\| \\
=\|\left(I-\varepsilon\left(A^{-1} B_{1}\right)+\varepsilon^{2}\left(A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{2}-\cdots\right) \\
\quad-\left(I-\varepsilon\left(A^{-1} B_{2}\right)+\varepsilon^{2}\left(A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{2}-\cdots\right) \|  \tag{D.9}\\
\leq \varepsilon\left\|A^{-1} B_{1}-A^{-1} B_{2}\right\|+\varepsilon^{2}\left\|\left(A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{2}-\left(A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{2}\right\|+\cdots \\
+\varepsilon^{k}\left\|\left(A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{k}-\left(A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{k}\right\|+\cdots .
\end{gather*}
$$

The mean value theorem yields

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left\|\left(A^{-1} B_{1}\right)^{k}-\left(A^{-1} B_{2}\right)^{k}\right\| \\
\leq\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{k}\left\|B_{1}^{k}-B_{2}^{k}\right\| \\
\leq\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{k} \sup \left\{\left\|k\left[(1-\theta) B_{1}+\theta B_{2}\right]^{k-1}\right\|: 0 \leq \theta \leq 1\right\}\left\|B_{1}-B_{2}\right\|  \tag{D.10}\\
\leq k\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{k}\left\|B_{1}-B_{2}\right\| .
\end{gather*}
$$

From (D.7), (D.9) and (D.10) it follows that for all $B_{1}, B_{2} \in \mathcal{D}$ and $\varepsilon \in$ $\left(0, \min \left\{\varepsilon_{1}, \varepsilon_{2}\right\}\right]$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|P_{\varepsilon}\left(B_{1}\right)-P_{\varepsilon}\left(B_{2}\right)\right\| \leq \varepsilon\left\|A^{-1}\right\| S_{1} S_{2}\left\|B_{1}-B_{2}\right\| \tag{D.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $S_{2}=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(k+1) \varepsilon^{k}\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{k}$ is a convergent series. Therefore the inequality (D.11) implies that if $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{3}\right]$, where $\varepsilon_{3}<\frac{1}{\left\|A^{-1}\right\| S_{1} S_{2}}$, then the mapping $P_{\varepsilon}$ is a contraction on $\mathcal{D}$ and thus it has a unique fixed point in $\mathcal{D}$. So if we set $x_{n}(\varepsilon)=$ $(A+\varepsilon B)^{n} x_{0}$, where $B$ is the unique fixed point of $P_{\varepsilon}$, the sequence $x=\left\{x_{n}(\varepsilon)\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}$ is a solution of (D.2) satisfying the condition $x_{0}(\varepsilon)=x_{0}$. As $\left\|A^{-1}\right\|<1$, choose $\varepsilon_{4}$ sufficiently small, such that $\left\|(A+\varepsilon B)^{-p}\right\| \leq\left\|(A+\varepsilon B)^{-1}\right\|^{p}<1$ for all positive integer $p$ and $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{4}\right]$. This implies that $\sup \left\{\left|x_{n}(\varepsilon)\right|:-\infty<n \leq 0\right\} \leq\left|x_{0}\right|<\infty$, i.e. $x=\left\{x_{n}(\varepsilon)\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \in F$.

We shall prove the uniqueness of the solution in $F$ of (D.2).
Consider the space

$$
\tilde{F}:=\left\{x=\left\{x_{n}\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{0}: x_{n} \in E, \sup \left\{\left|x_{n}\right|:-\infty<n \leq 0\right\}<\infty\right\}
$$

which is a Banach space with the norm $\|x\|:=\sup \left\{\left|x_{n}\right|:-\infty<n \leq 0\right\}$.
Let $x_{n}=A^{n} y_{n},-\infty<n \leq 0$. Then by substituting into (D.2), we obtain

$$
y_{n+1}=y_{n}+\varepsilon A^{-(n+1)}\left(R_{0} A^{n} y_{n}+R_{1} A^{n-1} y_{n-1}+\cdots+R_{k} A^{n-k} y_{n-k}+\cdots\right) .
$$

Observe that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& y_{0}-y_{-1}=\varepsilon\left(R_{0} A^{-1} y_{-1}+R_{1} A^{-2} y_{-2}+\cdots+R_{k} A^{-1-k} y_{-1-k}+\cdots\right), \\
& y_{-1}-y_{-2}=\varepsilon A\left(R_{0} A^{-2} y_{-2}+R_{1} A^{-3} y_{-3}+\cdots+R_{k} A^{-2-k} y_{-2-k}+\cdots\right), \\
& \left.y_{-(p-1)}-y_{-p} o t s\right) \\
& +\varepsilon\left(R_{0} A^{-1} y_{-1}+R_{1} A^{-2} y_{-2}+\cdots+R_{k} A^{-1-k} y_{-1-k}+\cdots\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

A return to the initial variable gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
A^{-p} x_{0}-x_{-p}= & \varepsilon A^{-1}\left(R_{0} x_{-p}+R_{1} x_{-p-1}+\cdots+R_{k} x_{-p-k}+\cdots\right) \\
& +\cdots+\varepsilon A^{-p+1}\left(R_{0} x_{-2}+R_{1} x_{-3}+\cdots+R_{k} x_{-2-k}+\cdots\right) \\
& +\varepsilon A^{-p}\left(R_{0} x_{-1}+R_{1} x_{-2}+\cdots+R_{k} x_{-1-k}+\cdots\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Define the mapping

$$
Q_{\varepsilon}: \tilde{F} \rightarrow\left\{x=\left\{x_{n}\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{0}, x_{n} \in E\right\},
$$

by

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\left(Q_{\varepsilon} x\right)_{-p}=\varepsilon A^{-1}\left(R_{0} x_{-p}+R_{1} x_{-p-1}+\cdots+R_{k} x_{-p-k}+\cdots\right)+\cdots \\
&+\varepsilon A^{-p}\left(R_{0} x_{-1}+R_{1} x_{-2}+\cdots+R_{k} x_{-1-k}+\cdots\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

for all positive integer $p$.
If $x=\left\{x_{n}\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{0} \in \tilde{F}$, we have for all positive integer $p$ the estimate

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\left(Q_{\varepsilon} x\right)_{-p}\right| \leq & \varepsilon\|x\|\left\{\left\|A^{-1}\right\|\left(\left\|R_{0}\right\|+\left\|R_{1}\right\|+\cdots+\left\|R_{k}\right\|+\cdots\right)+\cdots\right. \\
& \left.+\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{p}\left(\left\|R_{0}\right\|+\left\|R_{1}\right\|+\cdots+\left\|R_{k}\right\|+\cdots\right)\right\} \\
\leq & \frac{\varepsilon\|x\|}{1-\left\|A^{-1}\right\|}\left(1+\gamma^{-1}+\cdots+\frac{\gamma^{-k}}{k^{1-\alpha}}+\cdots\right) \\
\leq & \frac{\varepsilon\|x\|}{1-\left\|A^{-1}\right\|} \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-t} t^{\alpha-1} d t=\frac{\varepsilon\|x\|}{1-\left\|A^{-1}\right\|} \Gamma(\alpha),
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\Gamma(\alpha)$ is Euler's Gamma-function. Thus, for $x \in \tilde{F}$, we have $Q_{\varepsilon} x \in \tilde{F}$. Since $Q_{\varepsilon}$ is linear, it satisfies

$$
\left\|Q_{\varepsilon} x_{1}-Q_{\varepsilon} x_{2}\right\|=\left\|Q_{\varepsilon}\left(x_{1}-x_{2}\right)\right\| \leq \frac{\varepsilon \Gamma(\alpha)}{1-\left\|A^{-1}\right\|}\left\|x_{1}-x_{2}\right\|
$$

for all $x_{1}, x_{2} \in \tilde{F}$. This implies that if $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{5}\right]$, where $\varepsilon_{5}<\frac{1-\left\|A^{-1}\right\|}{\Gamma(\alpha)}$, then the mapping $Q_{\varepsilon}$ is a contraction on $\tilde{F}$ and thus has a unique fixed point $x^{*} \in \tilde{F}$. Since $Q_{\varepsilon}$ is linear, we conclude that $x^{*}=0$.

Let $x=\left\{x_{n}\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}, y=\left\{y_{n}\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \in F$ be two solutions of (D.2), satisfying the condition $y_{0}=x_{0}$ and let $x^{*}=\left\{y_{n}-x_{n}\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{0}$. The sequence $x^{*}$ is in $\tilde{F}$ and is the fixed point of $Q_{\varepsilon}$ and therefore $x^{*}=0$, i.e. $y_{n}=x_{n}$, for all $n \leq 0$. This prove the uniqueness of the solution of (D.2) for all $n \leq 0$.

On the other hand, from (D.2) and for $n>0$ we have

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left|x_{n}-y_{n}\right| \\
=\varepsilon\left|\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} A^{n-i-1}\left[R_{0}\left(x_{i}-y_{i}\right)+R_{1}\left(x_{i-1}-y_{i-1}\right)+\cdots+R_{k}\left(x_{i-k}-y_{i-k}\right)+\cdots\right]\right| .
\end{gathered}
$$

As $y_{k}=x_{k}$ for all integer $k \leq 0$, the above equality gives

$$
\begin{gathered}
\quad\left|x_{n}-y_{n}\right| \\
\leq \varepsilon\left\{\|A\|^{n-1}\left|x_{0}-y_{0}\right|+\|A\|^{n-2}\left[\left|x_{1}-y_{1}\right|+\gamma^{-1}\left|x_{0}-y_{0}\right|\right]\right. \\
\left.+\cdots+\left[\left|x_{n-1}-y_{n-1}\right|+\gamma^{-1}\left|x_{n-2}-y_{n-2}\right|+\cdots+\frac{\gamma^{-(n-2)}}{(n-2)^{1-\alpha}}\left|x_{0}-y_{0}\right|\right]\right\}
\end{gathered}
$$

From this inequality, it follows that

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left|x_{1}-y_{1}\right| \leq \varepsilon\left|x_{0}-y_{0}\right|=0 \\
\left|x_{2}-y_{2}\right| \leq \varepsilon\left\{\|A\|\left[\left|x_{0}-y_{0}\right|+\left|x_{1}-y_{1}\right|\right]\right\}=0
\end{gathered}
$$

etc. Therefore, by induction we have that $y_{n}=x_{n}$ for all $n>0$.
Consequently, the solution in $F$ of (D.2) is uniquely defined by the sequence $x=\left\{x_{n}(\varepsilon)\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty}=\left\{(A+\varepsilon B)^{n} x_{0}\right\}_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty}$.

Finally, we shall prove that for any positive integer $N$, there exists a positive constant $C$, depending on $\varepsilon_{0}, x_{0}$ and $N$, where $\varepsilon_{0}=\min \left\{\varepsilon_{i}: 1 \leq i \leq 5\right\}$, such that $\sup \left\{\left|x_{n}(\varepsilon)-A^{n} x_{0}\right|:-N \leq n \leq N\right\} \leq C \varepsilon$.

Let $n$ be an integer such that $0 \leq n<N$. By use of the binomial formula, we deduce the following estimate

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|x_{n}(\varepsilon)-A^{n} x_{0}\right| & \leq\left|\left[(A+\varepsilon B)^{n}-A^{n}\right] x_{0}\right| \\
& \leq\left\|(A+\varepsilon B)^{n}-A^{n}\right\|\left|x_{0}\right| \\
& \leq \varepsilon\left|x_{0}\right|\left\{C_{n}^{n-1}\|A\|^{n-1}\|B\|+\varepsilon C_{n}^{n-2}\|A\|^{n-2}\|B\|^{2}+\cdots+\varepsilon^{n-1}\right\} \\
& \leq c_{1} \varepsilon,
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
c_{1}=c_{1}\left(\varepsilon_{0}, x_{0}, N\right)=\left|x_{0}\right|\left\{C_{N}^{N-1}\|A\|^{N-1}+\varepsilon_{0} C_{N}^{N-2}\|A\|^{N-2}+\cdots+\varepsilon_{0}^{N-1}\right\},
$$

and

$$
C_{n}^{p}=\frac{n!}{p!(n-p)!} \quad \text { for } 0 \leq p \leq n \leq N
$$

For $-N \leq n<0$, we set $n=-k$. Then we have

$$
\begin{align*}
&\left|x_{n}(\varepsilon)-A^{n} x_{0}\right| \leq\left|\left[(A+\varepsilon B)^{n}-A^{n}\right] x_{0}\right| \\
& \leq\left\|(A+\varepsilon B)^{n}-A^{n}\right\|\left|x_{0}\right| \\
&=\left|x_{0}\right|\left\|(A+\varepsilon B)^{-k}-A^{-k}\right\| \\
&=\left|x_{0}\right|\left\|\left[(A+\varepsilon B)^{-1}\right]^{k}-\left[A^{-1}\right]^{k}\right\| \\
& \leq\left|x_{0}\right|\left\|(A+\varepsilon B)^{-1}-A^{-1}\right\|\left\{\left[(A+\varepsilon B)^{-1}\right]^{k-1}\right.  \tag{D.12}\\
& \leq\left.\quad+\left[(A+\varepsilon B)^{-1}\right]^{k-2} A^{-1}+\cdots+\left[A^{-1}\right]^{k-1}\right\} \\
& \leq\left|x_{0}\right|\left\|A^{-1}\right\|\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B\right)^{-1}-I\right\|\left\{\left\|(A+\varepsilon B)^{-1}\right\|^{k-1}\right. \\
&\left.\quad+\left\|A^{-1}\right\|\left\|(A+\varepsilon B)^{-1}\right\|^{k-2}+\cdots+\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{k-1}\right\} .
\end{align*}
$$

As we have seen above, $\left\|(A+\varepsilon B)^{-1}\right\|^{k}<1$, for all positive integer $k$ and $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right] \subset$ $\left(0, \varepsilon_{4}\right]$. On the other hand, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\left(I+\varepsilon A^{-1} B\right)^{-1}-I\right\| & =\left\|\left(I-\left(\varepsilon A^{-1} B\right)+\left(\varepsilon A^{-1} B\right)^{2}-\cdots\right)-I\right\| \\
& \leq \varepsilon\left\|A^{-1}\right\|\left\{1+\varepsilon\left\|A^{-1}\right\|+\varepsilon^{2}\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{2}+\cdots\right\} \\
& \leq \varepsilon \frac{\left\|A^{-1}\right\|}{1-\varepsilon\left\|A^{-1}\right\|} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, from (D.12) we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|x_{n}(\varepsilon)-A^{n} x_{0}\right| & \leq \varepsilon\left|x_{0}\right| \frac{\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{2}}{1-\varepsilon\left\|A^{-1}\right\|}\left\{1+\left\|A^{-1}\right\|+\cdots+\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{k-1}\right\} \\
& \leq \varepsilon\left|x_{0}\right| \frac{\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{2}}{1-\varepsilon\left\|A^{-1}\right\|} \cdot \frac{1}{1-\left\|A^{-1}\right\|} \\
& \leq c_{2} \varepsilon
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
c_{2}=c_{2}\left(\varepsilon_{0}, x_{0}\right)=\left|x_{0}\right| \frac{\left\|A^{-1}\right\|^{2}}{1-\varepsilon_{0}\left\|A^{-1}\right\|} \cdot \frac{1}{1-\left\|A^{-1}\right\|}
$$

Hence, the following inequality holds for $C=\min \left\{c_{1}, c_{2}\right\}$

$$
\sup \left\{\left|x_{n}(\varepsilon)-A^{n} x_{0}\right|:-N \leq n \leq N\right\} \leq C \varepsilon
$$

This completes the proof of the theorem.

## D. 3 Bibliography

[1] Yu. A. Ryabov, The existence of two-sided solutions of linear integrodifferential equations of Volterra type with delay, C̆as. Pĕstov. Mat. 111, 2 (1986), 26-33. (In Russian.)

## Appendix E

# Oscillation of two delays differential equations with positive and negative coefficients 

By Mustapha LAKRIB ${ }^{1}$


#### Abstract

Sufficient conditions for the oscillation of all the solutions of the first order delay differential equation with positive and negative coefficients


$$
\dot{x}(t)+p(t) x(t-\tau)-q(t) x(t-\sigma)=0
$$

are given.
MSC 2000. 34K15, 34C10
Keywords. Oscillation, Delay differential equations

## E. 1 Introduction

The oscillation theory of delay differential equations has been mostly developed during the past few years. This is motivated by the many applications of delay differential equations in physics, biology, ecology and physiology. We refer, for example, to $[5,9,11,13,15,27,30,32]$ and to the references cited therein.

The purpose of this paper is to consider the delay differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}(t)+p(t) x(t-\tau)-q(t) x(t-\sigma)=0, \tag{E.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $p$ and $q \in \mathcal{C}\left(\left[t_{0},+\infty\right), \mathbb{R}^{+}\right)$and $\tau, \sigma \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$.
By a solution of equation (E.1) on $\left[t_{0},+\infty\right.$ ), where $t_{0} \geq 0$, we mean a continuous function defined on $\left[t_{0}-\max \{\tau, \sigma\},+\infty\right)$, which is a differentiable function

[^3]$x$ on $\left[t_{0},+\infty\right)$ and satisfies equation (E.1) for all $t \geq t_{0}$. Such a solution is called oscillatory if it has arbitrarily large zeros. Otherwise it is called nonoscillatory.

The first systematic study for the oscillation of all solutions of the delay differential equation with positive coefficient

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}(t)+p(t) x(\tau(t))=0 \tag{E.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

was undertaken by Mishkis. In 1950 [31], he proved that every solution of the equation (E.2) oscillates if

$$
\limsup _{t \rightarrow+\infty}[t-\tau(t)]<+\infty, \quad \liminf _{t \rightarrow+\infty}[t-\tau(t)] \cdot \liminf _{t \rightarrow+\infty} p(t)>\frac{1}{e} .
$$

In 1972, Ladas, Lakshmikantham and Papadakis [25] proved that the same conclusion holds if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\limsup _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \int_{\tau(t)}^{t} p(s) d s>1 \tag{E.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

In 1979, Ladas [24] and in 1982, Koplatadze and Chanturiya [18] improved (E.3) to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\liminf _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \int_{\tau(t)}^{t} p(s) d s>\frac{1}{e} \tag{E.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Concerning the constant $1 / e$ in (E.4), it is to be noted that if the inequality

$$
\int_{\tau(t)}^{t} p(s) d s \leq \frac{1}{e}
$$

holds eventually, then, according to a result in [18], the equation (E.2) has a nonoscillatory solution.

How to fill the gap between the conditions (E.3) and (E.4) when the limit

$$
\lim _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \int_{\tau(t)}^{t} p(s) d s
$$

does not exists, is an interesting problem which has been recently investigated by several authors.

In 1988, Erbe and Zhang [10] developed new oscillation criteria by employing the upper bound of the ratio $x(\tau(t)) / x(t)$ for possible non-oscillatory solutions $x$ of the equation (E.2). Their result says that all the solutions of the equation (E.2) are oscillatory if $0<m \leq 1 / e$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
M>1-\frac{m^{2}}{4} \tag{E.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
m=\liminf _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \int_{t-\tau}^{t} p(s) d s \quad \text { and } \quad M=\limsup _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \int_{t-\tau}^{t} p(s) d s
$$

Since then, several authors obtained better results by improving the upper bound for $x(\tau(t)) / x(t)$. Among them, we can cite Chao [4], Yu and Wang [33] and Yu, Wang, Zhang and Qian [34].

In 1990, Elbert and Stravroulakis [8] and in 1991, Kwong [23], using different techniques, improved condition (E.5) in the case where $0<m \leq 1 / e$ to the conditions

$$
M>1-\left(1-\frac{1}{\sqrt{\lambda_{1}}}\right)^{2}
$$

and

$$
M>\frac{\ln \lambda_{1}+1}{\lambda_{1}}
$$

respectively, where $\lambda_{1}$ is the smaller root of the equation $\lambda=e^{m \lambda}$.
We also mention that in the case where

$$
\int_{\tau(t)}^{t} p(s) d s \geq \frac{1}{e} \quad \text { and } \quad \lim _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \int_{\tau(t)}^{t} p(s) d s=\frac{1}{e},
$$

this problem has been studied in 1995 by Elbert and Stravroulakis [8], Kozakiewics [19] and Li [28], and in 1996 by Li [29] and by Domshlak and Stavroulakis [6].

In 1998, Domshlak and Stavroulakis [7] and in 1999, Jaros and Stavroulakis [17] established sufficient conditions for the oscillation of all solutions of the equation (E.1) in the critical state that the corresponding limiting equation admits a nonoscillatory solution.

Among several other works devoted to the study of oscillatory properties of delay differential equations, we can cite the papers by Agwo [1], Arino and Györi [2], Arino, Ladas and Sficas [3], Gopalsamy [12], Gopalsamy and Ladas [14], Györi and Ladas [15], Györi, Ladas and Pakula [16], Kulenovic and Ladas [20, 21], Kulenovic, Ladas and Meimaridou [22] and Ladas and Stavroulakis [26].

In this paper, we provide new sufficient conditions for the oscillation of all the solutions of the equation (E.1) by means of the generalized characteristic equation.

## E. 2 The main result

We first give some results needed in the proof of our main theorem (Theorem E.2.1).
Lemma E.2.1 Let $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $r>0$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
r e^{r x} \geq r x+\ln e r \tag{E.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. Write the right hand side of (E.6) as

$$
\begin{aligned}
r x+\ln e r & =\ln e^{r x}+\ln e r \\
& =\ln e+\ln r e^{r x} \\
& =1+\ln r e^{r x} .
\end{aligned}
$$

So, inequality (E.6) becomes

$$
r e^{r x} \geq 1+\ln r e^{r x}
$$

or

$$
\begin{equation*}
r e^{r x}-\ln r e^{r x} \geq 1 \tag{E.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $z=r e^{r x}$ and consider the function $f(z)=z-\ln z$. In terms of $z$ and $f(z)$, inequality (E.7) reads

$$
f(z) \geq 1
$$

Note that $f(1)=1$ and $\frac{d}{d z} f(z)=\frac{z-1}{z}$, which implies that $f$ admits 1 as a minimum and then $f(z) \geq 1$ for all $z>0$.

Lemma E.2.2 ([15]) Suppose that $x \in \mathcal{C}\left(\left[t_{0},+\infty\right), \mathbb{R}\right)$ satisfies the inequality

$$
x(t) \leq c+\max _{t-\tau \leq s \leq t} x(s) \quad \text { for } \quad t \geq t_{0}
$$

where $c \leq 0, \tau \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$and $t_{0} \in \mathbb{R}$. Then $x$ cannot be a nonnegative function.
Lemma E. 2.3 ([15]) Let $p_{i} \in \mathcal{C}\left(\left[t_{0},+\infty\right), \mathbb{R}^{+}\right)$and $\tau_{i} \in \mathbb{R}^{+}, i=1, \ldots, n$. The differential inequality

$$
\dot{x}(t)+\sum_{i=1}^{n} p_{i}(t) x\left(t-\tau_{i}\right) \leq 0, \quad t \geq t_{0}
$$

has an eventually positive solution if and only if the differential equation

$$
\dot{y}(t)+\sum_{i=1}^{n} p_{i}(t) y\left(t-\tau_{i}\right)=0, \quad t \geq t_{0}
$$

has an eventually positive solution.
Consider the delay differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{y}(t)+a(t) y(t-\tau)=0, \quad t \geq t_{0} \tag{E.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

and let

$$
m=\liminf _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \int_{t-\tau}^{t} a(s) d s \quad \text { and } \quad M=\limsup _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \int_{t-\tau}^{t} a(s) d s
$$

Lemma E.2.4 ([17]) Suppose that $m>0$ and the equation (E.8) has an eventually positive solution $y$. Then $m \leq 1 / e$ and

$$
M \leq c_{1}=\frac{1+\ln \lambda_{1}}{\lambda_{1}}-L
$$

where $\lambda_{1}$ is the smaller root of the equation $\lambda=e^{m \lambda}$ and $L=\liminf _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \frac{y(t)}{y(t-\tau)}$.

Lemma E.2.5 ([33]) Let $0<m \leq 1 / e$ and let $y$ be an eventually positive solution of the equation (E.8). Then

$$
\limsup _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \frac{y(t-\tau)}{y(t)} \leq c_{2}=\frac{2}{1-m-\sqrt{1-2 m-m^{2}}}
$$

Lemma E.2.6 Consider the delay differential equation (E.1) and assume that the following conditions hold:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& (H 1): \quad p, q \in \mathcal{C}\left(\left[t_{0},+\infty\right), \mathbb{R}^{+}\right), \tau, \sigma \in \mathbb{R}^{+} \text {and } \tau \geq \sigma, \\
& (H 2): \quad p(t) \geq q(t+\sigma-\tau) \text { for } t \geq t_{0}+\tau-\sigma, \\
& (H 3): \quad \int_{t-\tau}^{t-\sigma} q(s+\sigma) d s \leq 1 \text { for } t \geq t_{0}+\tau,
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $x$ be an eventually positive solution of the equation (E.1) and $X$ the function defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
X(t)=x(t)-\int_{t-\tau}^{t-\sigma} q(s+\sigma) x(s) d s, \quad t \geq t_{0}+\tau-\sigma \tag{E.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then $X$ is decreasing and positive.
Proof. By differentiation, (E.9) gives

$$
\dot{X}(t)=\dot{x}(t)-q(t) x(t-\sigma)+q(t+\sigma-\tau) x(t-\tau)
$$

By (E.1) we see that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{X}(t)=-[p(t)-q(t+\sigma-\tau)] x(t-\tau) \tag{E.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Because that $x$ is positive for $t \geq t_{1}-\tau$, where $t_{1} \geq t_{0}+\tau$, and from hypothesis (H2), we conclude that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{X}(t)<0 \quad \text { for } \quad t \geq t_{1}+\tau \tag{E.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

which implies that $X$ is decreasing on $\left[t_{1}+\tau,+\infty\right)$.
Now, by contradiction we prove that $X$ is positive. Suppose that there exists a $t_{2} \geq t_{1}$ such that $X\left(t_{2}\right) \leq 0$. Inequality (E.11) implies that there exists a $t_{3} \geq t_{2}$ such that $X(t) \leq X\left(t_{3}\right) \leq 0$ for $t \geq t_{3}$. From (E.9) it follows that for $t \geq t_{3}$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
x(t) & =X(t)+\int_{t-\tau}^{t-\sigma} q(s+\sigma) x(s) d s \\
& \leq X\left(t_{3}\right)+\int_{t-\tau}^{t-\sigma} q(s+\sigma) x(s) d s \\
& \leq X\left(t_{3}\right)+\left(\max _{t-\tau \leq s \leq t-\sigma} x(s)\right) \int_{t-\tau}^{t-\sigma} q(s+\sigma) d s
\end{aligned}
$$

Hypothesis (H3) yields

$$
x(t) \leq X\left(t_{3}\right)+\max _{t-\tau \leq s \leq t-\sigma} x(s) \quad \text { for } \quad t \geq t_{3} .
$$

By Lemma E.2.2, $x$ cannot be nonnegative on $\left[t_{3},+\infty\right.$ ), which is a contradiction to the assumptions of our lemma. This completes the proof.

Our main result about the oscillation of all solutions of the equation (E.1) is embodied in the following:

Theorem E.2.1 Let the hypotheses (H1) to (H3) of Lemma E.2.6 are true. Let $a(t)=p(t)-q(t+\sigma-\tau)$ and assume that
$(H 4): \quad \lim \inf _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \int_{t-\tau}^{t} a(s) d s>0$
(H5): $\lim \sup _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \int_{\bar{t}_{0}}^{t} a(s) \ln \left(e \int_{s}^{s+\tau} a(u) d u\right) d s=+\infty$, for some $\bar{t}_{0}$.
Then every solution of the equation (E.1) is oscillatory.
Proof. For the sake of contradiction, we assume that (E.1) has a positive solution $x$. (For the case that (E.1) has a negative solution $\bar{x}$, we simply let $x=-\bar{x}$ ). By Lemma E.2.6, the function $X$ defined by (E.9) is positive. Also by (E.10) we have

$$
\dot{X}(t)+[p(t)-q(t+\sigma-\tau)] x(t-\tau)=0
$$

Since $0<X(t) \leq x(t)$ and $p(t) \geq q(t+\sigma-\tau)($ see $(H 2)), X$ satisfies

$$
\dot{X}(t)+[p(t)-q(t+\sigma-\tau)] X(t-\tau) \leq 0 .
$$

By Lemma E.2.3, the delay differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{y}(t)+[p(t)-q(t+\sigma-\tau)] y(t-\tau)=0 \tag{E.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

has a positive solution. Let $y$ be such a solution. Note that $y$ is decreasing for sufficiently large $t$. Dividing both sides of equation (E.12) by $y(t)$, we have

$$
\frac{\dot{y}(t)}{y(t)}+[p(t)-q(t+\sigma-\tau)] \frac{y(t-\tau)}{y(t)}=0 .
$$

Integrating both sides of this equation from $t-\tau$ to $t$, for sufficiently large $t$, we have

$$
\ln \frac{y(t)}{y(t-\tau)}+\int_{t-\tau}^{t}[p(s)-q(s+\sigma-\tau)] \frac{y(s-\tau)}{y(s)} d s=0
$$

Let $W(t)=\frac{y(t-\tau)}{y(t)}$. By the last equation, we have

$$
\int_{t-\tau}^{t}[p(s)-q(s+\sigma-\tau)] W(s) d s=\ln W(t)
$$

or

$$
W(t)=\exp \left(\int_{t-\tau}^{t} a(s) W(s) d s\right)
$$

where $a(t)=p(t)-q(t+\sigma-\tau)$. Multiplying the factor $a(t)$ in both sides of this equation, the function $\alpha(t)=a(t) W(t)$ satisfies the generalized characteristic equation

$$
\alpha(t)=a(t) \exp \left(\int_{t-\tau}^{t} \alpha(s) d s\right)
$$

Let $r(t)=\int_{t-\tau}^{t} a(s) d s$ and $x(t)=\frac{1}{r(t)} \int_{t-\tau}^{t} \alpha(s) d s$. The equation above is equivalent to

$$
r(t) \alpha(t)=a(t) r(t) e^{r(t) x(t)}
$$

By Lemma E.2.1 we get

$$
r(t) \alpha(t) \geq a(t)[r(t) x(t)+\ln e r(t)]
$$

which is equivalent to

$$
r(t) \alpha(t) \geq a(t)\left[\int_{t-\tau}^{t} \alpha(s) d s+\ln e r(t)\right]
$$

or

$$
\left(\int_{t-\tau}^{t} a(s) d s\right) \alpha(t)-a(t) \int_{t-\tau}^{t} \alpha(s) d s \geq a(t) \ln \left(e \int_{t-\tau}^{t} a(s) d s\right)
$$

Integrating both sides of this inequality from $\bar{t}_{0}$ to $T$, for $T>\bar{t}_{0}, \bar{t}_{0}$ sufficiently large, we have

$$
\begin{gather*}
\int_{\bar{t}_{0}}^{T}\left(\int_{t-\tau}^{t} a(s) d s\right) \alpha(t) d t-\int_{\bar{t}_{0}}^{T} a(t) \int_{t-\tau}^{t} \alpha(s) d s d t \\
\geq \int_{\bar{t}_{0}}^{T} a(t) \ln \left(e \int_{t-\tau}^{t} a(s) d s\right) d t \tag{E.13}
\end{gather*}
$$

By interchanging the order of integration, we find that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \int_{\bar{t}_{0}}^{T} a(t)\left(\int_{t-\tau}^{t} \alpha(s) d s\right) d t \geq \int_{\bar{t}_{0}}^{T-\tau}\left(\int_{s}^{s+\tau} a(t) \alpha(s) d t\right) d s \\
= & \int_{\bar{t}_{0}}^{T-\tau} \alpha(s)\left(\int_{s}^{s+\tau} a(t) d t\right) d s=\int_{\bar{t}_{0}}^{T-\tau} \alpha(t)\left(\int_{t}^{t+\tau} a(s) d s\right) d t .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence

$$
\begin{align*}
& \int_{\bar{t}_{0}}^{T} \alpha(t)\left(\int_{t-\tau}^{t} a(s) d s\right) d t-\int_{\bar{t}_{0}}^{T-\tau} \alpha(t)\left(\int_{t}^{t+\tau} a(s) d s\right) d t \\
& \quad \geq \int_{\bar{t}_{0}}^{T}\left(\int_{t-\tau}^{t} a(s) d s\right) \alpha(t) d t-\int_{\bar{t}_{0}}^{T} a(t) \int_{t-\tau}^{t} \alpha(s) d s d t \tag{E.14}
\end{align*}
$$

and therefore, from (E.13) and (E.14), it follows that

$$
\int_{T-\tau}^{T} \alpha(t)\left(\int_{t-\tau}^{t} a(s) d s\right) d t \geq \int_{\bar{t}_{0}}^{T} a(t) \ln \left(e \int_{t-\tau}^{t} a(s) d s\right) d t .
$$

Taking "limsup" on both sides of this inequality, we have

$$
\begin{align*}
M \cdot \limsup _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \int_{t-\tau}^{t} \alpha(s) d s & \geq \limsup _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \int_{t-\tau}^{t} \alpha(s)\left(\int_{s-\tau}^{s} a(u) d u\right) d s \\
& \geq \limsup _{t \rightarrow+\infty}^{t} \int_{\bar{t}_{0}}^{t} a(s) \ln \left(e \int_{s-\tau}^{s} a(u) d u\right) d s \tag{E.15}
\end{align*}
$$

where $M=\limsup _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \int_{t-\tau}^{t} a(s) d s$. Since $\alpha(t)=a(t) W(t)=-\frac{\dot{y}(t)}{y(t)}$, inequality (E.15) gives

$$
M \cdot \limsup _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \ln \frac{y(t-\tau)}{y(t)} \geq \limsup _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \int_{\vec{t}_{0}}^{t} a(s) \ln \left(e \int_{s-\tau}^{s} a(u) d u\right) d s .
$$

Using Lemma E.2.4 ( $M$ is finite) and hypothesis ( $H 5$ ), we deduce that

$$
\limsup _{t \rightarrow+\infty} \frac{y(t-\tau)}{y(t)}=+\infty
$$

In view of Lemma E.2.5, we have a contradiction. Thus the result of Theorem E.2.1 holds.

## Acknowledgement

The author wishes to thank the anonymous referee for his helpful suggestions.

## E. 3 Bibliography

[1] AGWO, H.A.: On the oscillation of delay differential equations with real coefficients, Internat. J. Math. \& Math. Sci. 22/3 (1999), 573-578.
[2] ARINO, O. and GYÖRI. I.: Necessary and sufficient condition for oscillation of a neutral differential system with several delays, J. Diff. Equ. 81/1 (1989), 98-105.
[3] ARINO, O., LADAS. G. and SFICAS, S.: On oscillations of some retarded differential equations, SIAM J. Math. Anal. 18 (1987), 64-73.
[4] CHAO, J.: On the oscillation of linear differential equations with deviating arguments, Math. Practice Theory 1 (1991), 32-40.
[5] COOKE, K.L. and YORKE, J.A.: Some equations modeling growth processes and Gonorrhea epidemic, Math. Biosc. 16 (1973), 75-101.
[6] DOMSHLAK, Yu. and STAVROULAKIS, I.P.: Oscillations of first order delay differential equations in a critical state, Appl. Anal. 61 (1996), 359-371.
[7] DOMSHLAK, Yu. and STAVROULAKIS, I.P.: Oscillation of differential equations with deviating arguments in a critical state, Dyn. Sys. Appl. 7 (1998), 405-412.
[8] ELBERT, A. and STAVROULAKIS, I.P.: Oscillations of first order differential equations with deviating arguments. In: Recent trends in differential equations, World Sci. Publ. Co. (1992), 163-178.
[9] ERBE, L. H., KONG, Q. and ZHANG, B.G.: Oscillation Theory for Functional Differential Equations, Pure and Applied Mathematics, Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1994.
[10] ERBE, L. H. and ZHANG, B.G.: Oscillation for first order linear differential equations with deviating arguments, Diff. Integ. Equ. 1 (1988), 305-314.
[11] ERGEN, W.K.: Kinetics of the circulating fuel neuclar reaction, J. Appl. Phys. 25 (1954), 702-711.
[12] GOPALSAMY, K.: Oscillatory properties of systems of first order linear delay differential inequalities, Pacific J. Math. 128 (1987), 299-305.
[13] GOPALSAMY, K.: Stability and Oscillations in Delay Differential Equations of Population Dynamics, Mathematics and its Applications, Vol. 74, Kluwer Academic Publishers Group, Dordrecht, 1992.
[14] GOPALSAMY, K. and LADAS, G.: Oscillation of delay differential equations, J. Austral. Math. Soc. Ser. B/32 (1991), 377-381.
[15] GYÖRI, I. and LADAS, G.: Oscillation Theory of Delay Differential Equations: With Applications, Oxford Mathematical Monographs, The Clarendon Press, Oxford University Press, New York, 1991.
[16] GYÖRI, I., LADAS, G. and PAKULA, L.: Oscillation Theorems for delay differential equations via Laplace transforms, Canad. Math. Bull. 33 (1990), 323-326.
[17] JAROS, J. and STAVROULAKIS, I.P.: Oscillation tests for delay equations, Rocky Mountain J. Math. 29/4 (1999), 1-11.
[18] KOPLATADZE, R.G. and CHANTURIYA, T.A.: On oscillatory and monotone solutions of first order differential equations with deviating arguments, Differentsial'nye Uravneniya 18 (1982), 1463-1465. (In Russian)
[19] KOZAKIEWICS, E.: Conditions for the absence of positive solutions of a first order differential equality with a single delay, Arch. Math. (Brno) 31 (1995), 291-297.
[20] KULENOVIC, M.R.S. and LADAS, G.: Linearized oscillation in population dynamics, Bull. Math. Bio. 44 (1987), 615-627.
[21] KULENOVIC, M.R.S. and LADAS, G.: Oscillations of sunflower equations, Qurt. Appl. Math. 46 (1988), 23-38.
[22] KULENOVIC, M.R.S., LADAS, G. and MEIMARIDOU, A.: On oscillation of nonlinear delay differential equations, Qurt. Appl. Math. 45 (1987), 155-162.
[23] KWONG, M.K.: Oscillation of first order delay equations, J. Math. Anal. Appl. 156 (1991), 274-286.
[24] LADAS, G.: Sharp conditions for oscillations caused by delays, Appl. Anal. 9 (1979), 93-98.
[25] LADAS, G., LAKSHMIKANTHAM, V. and PAPADAKIS, L.S.: Oscillations of higher order retarded differential equations generated by the retarded arguments. In: Delay and Functional Differential Equations and Their Applications, Academic Press, New York, 1972, 219-231.
[26] LADAS, G. and STAVROULAKIS, I.P.: Oscillations caused by several retarded and advanced arguments, J. Diff. Equ. 44 (1982), 143-152.
[27] LADDE, G.S., LAKSHMIKANTHAM, V. and ZHANG, B.G.: Oscillation Theory of Differential Equations with Deviating Arguments, Monographs and Texbooks in Pure and Applied Mathematics, Vol. 110, Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1987.
[28] LI, B.: Oscillations of delay differential equations with variable coefficients, $J$. Math. Anal. Appl. 192 (1995), 312-321.
[29] LI, B.: Oscillation of first order delay differential equations, Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. 124 (1996), 3729-3737.
[30] MACDONALD, N.: Biological Delay Systems: Linear Stability Theory, Combridge University Press, 1989.
[31] MISHKIS, A.D.: Linear homogeneous differential equations of first order with deviating arguments, Uspekhi Math. Nauk. 5/36 (1950), 160-162. (In Russian)
[32] TRAMOV, M.I.: Conditions for the oscillation of the solutions of first order differential equations with retarded argument, Izv. Vyssh. Uchebn. Zaved. Mat. 154/3 (1975), 92-96 (In Russian).
[33] YU, J.S. and WANG, Z.C.: Some further results on oscillation of neutral differential equations, Bull. Austral. Math. Soc. 46 (1992), 149-157.
[34] YU, J.S., WANG, Z.C., ZHANG, B.G. and QIAN, X.Z.: Oscillations of differential equations with deviating arguments, Panam. Math. J. 2 (1992), 59-78.


[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ The references of this paper are:
    Journal: Maghreb Mathematical Review (In press).

[^1]:    ${ }^{1}$ The references of this paper are:
    Journal: Maghreb Mathematical Review.
    Volume 8, No 1 \& 2, June \& Dec. 1999, pp. 119-128.
    Received: June 27, 1998; Revised: February 10, 1999.

[^2]:    ${ }^{1}$ The references of this paper are:
    Journal: Southwest Journal of Pure and Applied Mathematics (electronic).
    Issue 2, December 2000, pp. 52-59.
    Submitted: August 7, 2000. Published: December 15, 2000.

[^3]:    ${ }^{1}$ The references of this paper are:
    Journal: Mathematica Pannonica.
    Volume 12, Issue 2 (2001), pp. 225-234.
    Received: March 2000.

